

I

N

Che

M

The
M
Buc
Yea

Printed
at the
Ange

AN
ACCOUNT
OF
Monsieur de la SALLE's
LAST
Expedition and DISCOVERIES
IN
North AMERICA.

Presented to the *French King*,

And Published by the

Chevalier *Tonti*, Governour of Fort St. Louis,
in the Province of the *Illinois*.

Made *English* from the *Paris* Original.

ALSO
The ADVENTURES of the Sieur de
MONTAUBAN, Captain of the *French*
Buccaneers on the Coast of *Guinea*, in the
Year 1695.

LONDON,

Printed for *J. Tonson* at the *Fudge's Head*, and *S. Buckley*
at the *Dolphin* in *Fleet-street*, and *A. Knaplock*, at the
Angel and Crown in *St. Paul's Church-Yard*. 1698.

H. b. 12

A

N

T

self upon
tion from
it would

Preface

Mon

of Roan

taker of

America

ter of th

ordinar

rage.

the Des

of Front

A NEW
ACCOUNT
OF THE
Northern-America.

TRUTH and Sincerity being the chief Qualities, which make a Book of this nature Valuable, the Author of this promises himself upon that account a favourable Reception from the Publick: and therefore thinks it would be superfluous to make a longer Preface.

Monfieur Cavelier de La Salle, a Native of Roan in Normandy, the chiet Undertaker of the Discoveries in the *Northern America*, which make the Subject-Matter of this Book, was a Man of extraordinary Parts, and undaunted Courage. He was the first that formed the Design of Travelling from the Lake of Frontenac in Canada, to the Gulph of
B Mexico,

Mexico, through a vast unknown Country, in order to bring the Inhabitants to the Knowledge of the Christian Religion, and Extend the Dominions of the King of *France*. This Gentleman having duly weighed all the Difficulties that were like to cross so Noble a Design, came to Court to acquaint his Majesty with it, who was pleased not only to approve his Enterprize, but also to Encourage it, by the Liberal Assistance, and the Power he gave to *M. La Salle*, to dispose of his New Discoveries as he should think fit.

I was then at the Court of *France* to solicit some Employment, having served his Majesty both by Sea and Land, and lost one Hand in *Sicily* by a Granado, and as *M. La Salle* was upon his departure, the Prince of *Conti* was pleased to recommend me to him, as fit to accompany him in his Undertaking, whereupon I was easily admitted, the Patronage of His Highness having been very useful to *M. La Salle*. Every thing being ready for our departure, we set sail from *Rochel*, *July* 14. 1678. to the number of 30 Men, amongst whom were Pilots, Carpenters, Smiths and other useful Artists, and arrived at

Quebec

lle.

unknown Coun-
the Inhabitants
Christian Re-
Dominions of
his Gentleman
the Difficulties
Noble a De-
acquaint his
s pleased not
prize, but al-
e Liberal Af-
he gave to
his New Dis-
fit.

of France to
nt, having
by Sea and
Sicily by a
e was upon
Conti was
him, as fit
ndertaking,
mitted, the
having been
very thing
re, we set
78. to the
gft whom
nicks and
rrived at
Quebec

Quebec upon the 15th of September follow-
ing; we remained there some days, after
which having taken our Leave of Count
Frontenac Governor-General of *Canada*,
we sailed up the River *St. Laurence* to
Fort Frontenac, where we landed.

That Fort lyes within 120 Leagues
from *Quebec*, about the 44th Degree of
Latitude, on the Mouth of a Lake cal-
led likewise *Frontenac* or *Ontario*, which
is near 300 Leagues about, and has a
communication with four other Lakes,
much of the same extent. All those
Lakes are Navigable, and plentifully
stored with Fish; The Mouth, or en-
trance of this Lake is defended by a
Fort with four large Bastions, which
might protect a great number of Vessels
against the attempts of any Enemy.
As *M. La Salle* had Erected this Fort,
the King had given him the Propriety
thereof, and of all the Lakes there-
abouts with their dependencies. The
Country about it is so Charming, that
it is impossible to describe its Beauties:
The vast Meadows are intermixed with
Woods and Forests, full of all sorts of
Fruit-Trees, and watered with fine
Brooks and Rivers.

It was in this place that we prepared our selves for our great Voyage, and Glorious Undertaking, of which no body, I am sure, can give a better account than my self, not only because I accompanied the said *M. La Salle*, but also because the chief Care and Burthen of that Perilous, tho' Glorious Enterprize, fell upon me by the untimely Death of that Gentleman. The Account which I offer now to the Publick, is extracted out of the Journal I kept, wherein I set down things as they appeared to me: 'Tis true, I am sometimes obliged to take things upon Trust, because I could not be always with *M. La Salle*, but I am so fully convinced of the Probity and Honesty of those upon whose Evidence I have advanced any thing, that I may answer as well for their Observations as for my own. The Reader must not therefore expect here Noble and Pompous Descriptions, such as Authors use to adorn their Works with, but a natural simplicity, and a rigid fidelity. If my Stile seems harsh and unpolite, I have no other Apology for it, but that I may have contracted some thing from the Commerce

lle.

we prepared
Voyage, and
which no bo-
a better ac-
ly because I
La Salle, but
and Burthen
rious Enter-
ne untimely
The Ac-
the Publick,
nal I kept,
as they ap-
I am some-
upon Trust,
ways with
ly convin-
ty of those
advanced
er as well
my own.
re expect
scriptions,
orn their
implicity,
tile seems
no other
may have
he Com-
merce

M. De La Salle.

5

merce of the Savages of *America*, with
whom I have so long conversed.

Whosoever considers this Enterprize
in it self, the difficulties it was attend-
ed with, and the advantages that *Eu-
rope* may reap from the discovery of
those vast Countries, which are above
eighteen hundred Leagues North and
South, will I hope agree, that an ex-
act account thereof is worthy of the Cu-
riosity of the Reader.

That large Country is now called by *The Ferti-*
the name of *Louisiana*, since the *French* *ility of the*
took possession thereof in the Name of *Soil.*
Lewis the Great. The Soil is, generally
speaking, so fertile, that it produces
Naturally without any Culture, those
Fruits that Nature and Art together
have much ado to bring forth in *Europe* :
They have two Crops every Year
without any great fatigue ; the Vines
bring extraordinary Grapes, without
the Care of the Husbandmen ; and the
Fruit-Trees need no Gardiners to look
after them ; the Air is every where
temperate ; the Country is watered
with Navigable Rivers, and delicious
Brooks and Rivulets, and diversified
with Forests and Meadows ; it is stocked
with all sorts of Beasts, as Bulls, *Orig-*
inae's,

nae's, Wolves, Lines, Wild Asses, Stags,
 Goats, Sheep, Foxes, Hares, Beavers,
 Otters, Dogs, and all sorts of Fowls,
 which afford a plentiful Game for the
 Inhabitants. They have discovered
 Mines of Lead and Iron, and 'tis not
 doubted but there are also Mines of
 Gold and Silver, if they would give
 themselves the trouble to look for them,
 but the Inhabitants of those Countries
 valuing things only as far as they are
 necessary for Life, are yet unacquaint-
 ed with the Fanciful Value we put
 upon those Metals, and have not dig'd
 up the Earth to look for them.

*The Man-
 ners of the
 Inhabi-
 tants.*

Those Inhabitants have nothing of
 Man but the Shape and the Name;
 they live without any Laws, Religion,
 Superiority, or Subordination, Indepen-
 dency and Liberty being their *Summum*
Bonum, or the ultimate end they pro-
 pose to themselves. Their Life is al-
 ways wandering, having no settled Pos-
 sessions; they take several Wives, if
 they please, whom they quit when they
 will, and leave them to others, just as
 they do their Habitations, for after
 having for some time cultivated a piece
 of Ground, they quit it without any
 occasion to Cultivate another, and the
 first

first
 tha
 the
 mo
 con
 Sup
 mac
 I
 seen
 beca
 ther
 nera
 not
 Som
 cy th
 rits,
 and
 lieve
 has a
 or Hu
 that
 that a
 ftition
 who a
 I d
 ried th
 on the
 true,
 tality,
 Transf

first comer takes possession thereof, so that they are perpetually changing their Habitations, and by this continual motion, every thing becomes in a manner common amongst them : they know no Superiority, and think the World is made only for them.

I said they have no Religion, tho' it ^{Their Reli-} seems they have an obscure Idea of God, ^{gion.} because they live as if they thought there was none. They believe in general that there is a God, but who does not concern himself in what they do. Some Worship the Sun, and others fancy that the World is full of certain Spirits, who preside over their Actions, and they are so extravagant as to believe, that every thing in the World has a Spirit, and that they are Good or Hurtful according to the *Caprice* of that Spirit. 'Tis upon this Principle that are grounded all the foolish Superstitions of their *Jugglers* or *Monitous*, who are their Priests or Magicians.

I don't believe that they have carried their Reflections so far, as to think on the Nature of their Souls; tho' 'tis true, they seem to believe their Immortality, and a kind of *Metempsychosis*, or Transmigration of Souls; but they have

so many extravagant fancies upon this Subject, that it is in a manner impossible to discover their true Opinion. I may say in general, that they are so stupid in matters of Religion, that they are not convinced of their own Belief, nor of what others believe, and therefore Laugh at the Instructions of our Missionaries.

*Their Good
qualities.*

However, notwithstanding that brutish temper, they have as good a Sense as the rest of Mankind, to know their true Interests, and therefore are capable of Negotiations, Commerce, and Counsel. They know how to weigh and consider the Consequences of an Enterprize, and take Just Measures to compass it. When they meet together to consult about some great Design, they sit in a private place, in a profound Silence, smoking Tobacco, and every one speaks gravely in his turn. It is to be observed by the by, that they never make any Treaty, Convention or Agreement with any body, till they have first of all, mutually exchanged Presents. They give commonly Collars as the Symbol of Union; they have a particular Kettle for Peace, and another for War. They proclaim Peace with
the

alle.

cies upon this
manner im-
true Opinion.
t they are so
on, that they
rown Belief,
e, and there-
ctions of our

ling that bru-
good a Sense
know their
re are capable
e, and Coun-
o weigh and
of an Enter-
ures to com-
t together to
Design, they
profound Si-
and every
n. It is to
t they never
on or Agree-
they have
anged Pre-
y Collars as
have a par-
nd another
Peace with
the

M. De La Salle.

9

the *Calumet*, and War by great Out-
cries, or rather dreadful Howlings.

They know likewise how to Incamp, <sup>Their Sci-
ence in</sup>
and Fortify their Camps with Intrench-
ments and Pallisadoes. They observe
also some Order in their Attacks.

This Soil produces indifferently all <sup>Their Til-
lage.</sup>
sorts of Corn and Plants, but as they
have observed, that some among them
are more proper for their Nourishment
than others, they take care to Sow and
Cultivate them, and therefore they have
great Crops of *Indian Corn*, of which
they make a sort of very delicious and
nourishing Pap. They Cultivate also
what they call *Touquo*, of which they
make their *Cassave*, and Turneps, where-
with they make *Cassamite*. These are
their own terms, which are not to be
translated. There are in their Country <sup>Their Phy-
sick.</sup>
several sorts of Trees, from which an
excellant Balsam drops, the use where-
of the Savages know very well, as also
of several Plants against Wounds, and
the venomous bitings or stinging of Ser-
pents and other Creatures.

Their Knowledge is not circumscri- <sup>Their Astro-
nomy.</sup>
bed within those narrow bounds, they
carry it as far as Heaven, and have ob-
tained a sufficient Knowledge of the
Course

Course of the Sun, Moon and Planets and pretend thereby to foretel the changes of the Weather, Winds, Storms and other things of this nature.

Their Dexterity.

Besides those qualities already mentioned, they have a wonderful dexterity at several beautiful and useful Works. Some of them make extraordinary fine Mats for their Coverings, and adorning their Cabins; others have found the way to Dress Leather to make Wastecoats and Shoes; but their greatest dexterity appears, in my opinion, in the structure of their *Canoos* which can never sink. They make them with the Barks of Elm, Walnut-trees or Elder-trees, about 10 or 12 Foot long, the sides being a little turned inward as *Gondolas*. Instead of Oars they make use of two pieces of Wood, like two Bakers Peals, and term *Swimming* what we call *Rowing*. As their *Canoos* draw very little Water, because of their lightness, the Savages *Swim* with an extraordinary swiftness, even against the stream of Rivers, and undertake very long Voyages without fearing Rocks or Storms.

Their Travels by Land.

Tho' there are neither Road nor Path in that Country, they Travel through these vast Forests and Wildernesses, with

alle.

on and Planets
to foretel the
Winds, Storms
nature.

s already men
nderful dexter
useful Works
aordinary fine
s, and adorn
s have found
her to make

ut their great
y opinion, in
os which can
hem with the
ees or Elder-
long, the side
d as *Gondolas*.
e use of two
Bakers Peals,
we call *Rom*.
w very little
ghtness, the
extraordinary
ne stream of

y long Voy-
s or Storms.
oad nor Path
vel through
Wildernesses,
with

M. De La Salle.

11

with the help of certain Marks they make upon the Rind of Trees from place to place ; and by these means, the Women and Children are able to find the Men when they go a Hunting, or upon any Expedition. They very seldom bring home what they kill, and it is the Office of their Wives to fetch it and dress it.

I think fit to add, in this Place, a *Their Cabins.* short Account of their Cabins, Household-Goods, and the like. Many of them are wandering in Woods, where they lie upon the Ground as Beasts ; but such who live together, make Cabins, or Huts, with Branches of Trees driven into the ground, interlaced with others, and joined at the top as close as possible, and covered with Reeds, or large Leaves of Trees. The inside looks somewhat better, it is well-enough Matted, and most of them have a sort of curious Floor.

Their Bedsteads are made up with *Their Beds.* some pieces of wood, upon which they lay skins full of Wool or Straw ; but for their Covering, they use the finest sort of Skins, or else Mats finely wrought.

They

Their Kitchen Utensils.

They have Cellars, or rather Holes to preserve their Corn, their Wood, and other Provisions; but all their Kitchen Utensils consists in some few pieces of Earthen-Ware, which they make with Clay, and harden it with the Dung of Bulls. They have no sorts of Mills but instead thereof, use to grind their Corn between two Stones, with a great deal of trouble. They make use of a sort of sharp Stones instead of Knives but this must be understood of such Savages, who never had any Commerce with Europeans.

Their Arms.

They use Bows and Arrows with great dexterity, and the extremity of their Arrow is arm'd, instead of Iron with a sharp Stone, or the Tooth of some Animal. They have besides heavy Clubs, or sharp Sticks, instead of Swords or Halberds. They use also wooden Corslets against Arrows, and make Bucklers with several skins stitched together.

Their Apparel.

Most of them go stark Naked, and are so inured to Rain, and other Hardships, that their bodies are almost insensible; and the soles of their Feet so hard, as to resist the sharpness of Thorns and Stones. Their Women have

Salle. have still preserved a shadow of Modesty, for they wear commonly about their waste a large Girdle, from which hang two pieces of skin, which cover in some manner their Nakedness. I speak of those Savages who Inhabit a Temperate Climate, for those who live to the Northward of *Quebec*, and other cold Countries, cover themselves with skins of Bears, Stags, Ellends, and the like. I must observe also, that those who Inhabit toward *Mexico*, seem more civilized than others; for tho' their Climate is pretty Hot, they cover themselves with Mats finely wrought.

The care of the Family lies equally upon the Husband and the Wife: The former goes a Fishing or Hunting for the Family; and the Wife Tills the ground, and gets in what she has sow'd. It is likewise her Duty to fetch Fruit, herbs, and other things in the Woods. When the Savage is come back from hunting, he takes first of all his Pipe, and as he smoaks, tells his Wife what he has done, and what he would have her to do, which she must obey without any reluctance.

One may observe in Men a great Gravity and Authority, and in Women

an

The care of the Family divided between the Husband & the Wife.

Charaſter of the Savages.

an extraordinary Complaisance for their Husbands, and as they follow their Natural Instinct in every thing they do, their Behaviour is always sincere and without any affectation ; and one may truly say, That the conjugal Union between them, is the effect of a Natural Inclination, which is common to Men and to Brutes, and not founded upon a true Friendship.

of Women in particular.

The Savages being perpetually in Action, they are free from several Diseases that the *Europeans* are subject to, and 'tis observable, that these Women have not that natural Incommodity that ours are liable unto, and that, which is still more to be wonder'd at, they bring forth without any Pain, or at least without any ceremony as they go along, making no other Provision for it, than their own girdle, and some Skins to wrap up the Child into.

The Breeding of their Children.

They have a very extraordinary way to bring up their Children, for though they have no Clouts or Swath-Bands, they have found a way to keep them very clean without any great Trouble. They provide themselves with a good quantity of Dust of rotten Wood, which is as soft as any Down whatsoever, and

alle.

complaisance for
they follow their
thing they de
ys sincere and
; and one may
gal Union be
t of a Natural
mmon to Men
ounded upon a
very good to preserve them against Hu-
midity. They lay their Children upon
that Dust, and wrap them into some
good Furs, and tie them pretty fast, and
have nothing to do for dressing them,
but to change that Dust, by means
whereof they keep them always clean,
all they are able to walk about.

They Feed them with Pap, made *How they feed them.*
with Indian Corn, and give them a
Bow as soon as they can walk ; so that
they use themselves to shoot, and follow
their Parents into the Woods, learning
thereby betimes the usual Places for
that, which Hunting ; and having no manner of E-
ducation, they are only guided by their
Natural Inclination and Sensuality, as
ny as they goasts.

I should never make an End, should
undertake to give a particular Account
of all the Customs of the Savages ; but
think that what I have said is sufficient
to convince the Reader, that their In-
telligence extends only to what is Ne-
cessary for supporting their Natural
life ; and that if they have any Law
amongst them, it is to observe none at
all. Born and bred up in Forrests, Hunt-
ing is their greatest Pastime, to which
may add War, Quarrels, and Cruelty,
which

which is such, that they must turn their Arms against harmless Beasts, where to for they want Pretences or Opportunities to use them against Men.

Mr. La
Salle un-
dertakes
with 30
Men to
Travel
through
those Na-
tions.

It was through those Wild Nations that Mr. La Salle undertook to Travel and discover a Way to the Gulph of Mexico; and whosoever will impartially consider that Enterprize, must agree that this courageous Design can hardly be parallell'd. But this will appear the better, if they consider what Preparations he made for that great Journey. He had only *Thirty* Men, abroad, I have already said, without any other Provisions, but Powder and Shot, which were to supply him during his Voyage. We had first of all a Bark, and some Canoes, but we were soon deprived of that help, and forc'd to Travel by another Land, and carry our Equipage, crossing large Rivers upon Rafts, or Trees very having no other Guide through those vast unknown Countries but a Compass and the Genius of our Commander, who (according to the variation of the Needle, and the Knowledge he had in Astronomy) was able to guess at the Climate we were in, and what course we were to follow.

These

alle.

M. De La Salle.

17

These Difficulties, the Armies of Sa-
must turn their backs, which we were obliged to Fight
Beasts, where force our way, Hunger, Thirst, and
Opportunities other Wants and Perils, were however
surmounted by our Courage and Con-
Wild Nationstancy, so that we arriv'd at the Gulph
ook to Travel of *Mexico*, and after several Misfortunes
the Gulph returned Home. But before I proceed
will impartially further, I think fit to give an Ac-
must agree count of the *Four Lakes* I have already
gn can hardly mentioned.

will appear The *First* lies above the 47 Degree of ^{The upper}
consider what Latitude, and is called *Upper Lake*, or of ^{Lake, or}
or that great *Frontenac*, and may be 80 Leagues ^{superior}
thirty Men, abroad, and 300 in circuit. It has com- ^{Lake.}
out any other communication with the Lake *Herie*, or of
d Shot, which *Conti*, by a Canal of above 20 Leagues
g his Voyage long, interrupted by a Fall of 600 Foot
rk, and some high, known under the Name of *Fall of*
n deprived of *Niagara*. This Lake of *Conti* joins with
o Travel by another called *The Lake of the Hurons*, or
age, crossing of *Orleans*, by a Canal or stream which
s, or Trees very Rapid, and this last Lake has
rough those communication to the South with a
ut a Compass *Fourth*, called, *The Lake of the Illinois*,
mander, where of the *Dauphin*: It joins also by the
ion of the *North-side* with another Lake, larger
ge he had than any of the rest, called, *The Lake of*
guesses at the *Ponde*; but we did not see it.
what course

These

C

Having.

We Sail
from Fort
Frontenac.

Having Refreshed our selves about their
Fortnight at Fort *Frontenac*, we en hear
barqued on the 18th. of *Novembe* pow
1678. on Board a Vessel of 40 Tunn figh
to cross the first Lake I have mentione Posse
and this was the First Ship that eve and
Sail'd upon this Fresh Water Sea. Th three
Wind being very contrary, we spent are
whole Month before we could arrive a great
a Village called *St. Onnontouane*, where Cour
Mr. *La Salle* sent some Canoos to fetch again
Indian Corn for our subsistence ; and When
from thence we continued our Course than
towards *Niagara*, but the Stream being try-m
too rapid, and the Wind contrary, w give
we were obliged to cast an Anchor about of the
9 Leagues from that Place, whither w Cruel
went by Land. *Niagara* is a Village preca
of the *Iroquois*, situated upon the Lake Exper
of *Conti*, near the wonderful Fall This
have taken Notice of. as I ha

An A-
count of
the Iro-
quois.

This Nation, the most Warlike and very k
Cruel of all the *Americans*, is possessed their V
of a Tract of Land from *Montreal*, on to view
rather from the place where the Two League
Rivers, which form that of *St. Lau* having
rence, meet, to the further end of the tion, A
Lake of *Conti*, which is about Two on of it
Hundred Leagues to the *South*. This upon it
Nation is very Ambitious to command but the
their

selves about their Neighbours; and when they
 hear of any other Nation which grows
 powerful, either by the Number of their
 fighting Men, or by the extent of their
 Possessions, they march to subdue them,
 and they make sometimes Excursions
 three or four hundred Leagues. They
 are indefatigable, undaunted in the
 greatest danger; and of such a fierce
 Courage and Constancy, as to be proof
 against the most exquisite Torments,
 When taken by their Enemies, rather
 than betray the Designs of their Coun-
 try-men: They never ask, and seldom
 give Quarter. They drink the Blood
 of their Enemies, and add to their great
 Cruelty, all the Stratagems, Subtilty and
 precaution, that one might expect from
 Experienc'd Soldiers.

This Nation, tho' Fierce and Cruel,
 as I have represented them, receiv'd us
 very kindly. We laid one Night in
 their Village, and went the next Day
 to view a proper place, above Three
 Leagues higher, to Build a Fort, and
 having found an advantagious Situa-
 tion, M. De la Salle laid the Foundati-
 on of it, and ordered his Men to Work
 upon it with all imaginable Diligence;
 but the *Jroquois* taking some Jealousie at
 their

*They re-
 ceiv'd us
 kindly
 by the
 French.*

it; it was thought fit to desist, to avoid giving Offence to so dangerous an Enemy; and therefore we contented ourselves to fortifie our Magazine with strong Palifadoes.

M. la Salle had given orders for Building a new Ship or great Bark, and our Men workt about it with all the diligence that the Season of the Year could permit; but the cold was so excessive that not only Rivers, but even those vast Lakes were frozen all over, in so much that they look'd like a Plain pav'd with fine polish'd Marble. We traded in the mean time with the Natives, and got a great number of Furrs; but several things being wanting to continue our Voyage, this courageous Gentleman resolv'd to return by Land to Fort Frontenac, and come back again in the Spring with a new supply of Ammunition and Merchandise, to trade with the Nations he intended to visit. He sent likewise fifteen Men further into the Country, with orders to endeavour to find out the *Illinois*, and left his Fort on *Niagara*, and fifteen Men under my command. One of the *Recollects* continued with us.

The Winter being over, a Bark arrived from three

Salle.

M. De La Salle.

21

to desist, to avoid
dangerous an Enemy
we contented our
Magazine with
orders for Building
at Bark, and our
with all the dili-
of the Year could
was so excessive
but even those
in all over, infor-
like a Plain pay'd
le. We traded
the Natives, and
rurs; but several
to continue our
ous Gentleman
nd to Fort Fron-
again in the
ly of Ammunition
to trade with
d to visit. He
further into the
endeavour to
est his Fort on
under my com-
lets continued
a Bark arrived
from

from Fort *Frontenac*, with Ammunition
and Merchandises, but it was stav'd to
pieces against the Coast, by the fault
of the Pilot, however most of the Ef-
fects were sav'd; and soon after, *M. la*
Salle arrived, who immediately renew-
ed his Commerce with the *Iroquois*, and
endeavoured to give them some Idea of
the Power of the King, that they might
have some respect for his Subjects. This
new Ship being near finished, he sent
me with five Men to view the Coast,
and the Country to the North side of
the Lake, above 120 Leagues from *Nia-*
gara. We Embarked in our Canoes,
and having rowed two days, or rather
swom, to use the stile of the Savages, ar-
rived to the straight of the Lake *Heriè*.
This straight or Canal, by which the
Lake *Heriè* joins with that of the *Hu-*
rons, is about Thirty Leagues long. I
landed to the North side, and enquired
for the Men *M. la Salle* had sent before;
but hearing they were gone higher, I
advanced into the Country in hopes to
find them; and this gave me an oppor-
tunity to take an exact survey of that
delicious Peninsula, which has almost
the form of an Heart, by reason of the
three Lakes already mentioned.

C 3

Having

Having made all the Observations thought necessary both as to the Canals between the two Lakes, and the nature of the Soil, I returned to give an account thereof to M. la Salle, who, before my arrival, was gone back to Fort Frontenac with a considerable quantity of Furs, from whence he returned to Niagara, on the Seventh of August, 1679, with a fresh supply of Ammunition and Provisions, and three Recollects. The Spring and most part of the Summer were thus spent in frequent goings and comings, which however are absolutely necessary in order to make a good and lasting Settlement.

Our Bark being finished, and everything ready for our departure, we sailed towards the middle of August, and having happily crossed the Lake *Heriè*, got into that of the *Hurons*, which, as has been already said, is much larger than the other two. We met there with a dreadful Storm, as great as any that ever heard of upon the Ocean, or any other Sea, but we had the good Fortune to find a good Road called *Mississachinac*. It is an *Isthmus*, or neck of Land about Twenty Leagues broad, and 120 long, between the Lake of the *Hurons*

Observations ~~was~~ and that of the *Illinois*, which is one
as to the *Canada* the finest situations in the World ; and
and the nature slides the prodigious fertility of the
to give an ac- oil, and all sorts of Game, the Inha-
lle, who, before tants have an extraordinary plenty of
ck to Fort *Fron* ish.

le quantity of *M. la Salle* took an exact survey of *Fall St. Ma-*
returned to *Nia* at fine Country, and having marked *ry*.
August, 1679 at a Fort for our security, sent me,
mmunition and ith some others, towards the North-
Recollects. The ast, to observe the *Fall St. Mary*, and
e Summer were endeavour to discover some of our De-
ings and com- terts. This *Fall* forms two Canals,
e absolutely ne and a pretty large Island, which being
good and last united, make a very Rapid River,
y which the Lake of the *Hurons* has
ommunication with another much lar-
ed, and ever er than all the rest. I went a-shore
ture, we fail- on the Northern Coast of the Lake
August, and ha- *Huron*, and advanced through a most
Lake *Heriè*, go- delicious Country, as far as the River
, which, as i- *onta*, which coming out of that great
much large lake, runs about a Hundred Leagues,
met there wit- and falls into the River *St. Laurence*.
t as any that he charming Prospect of the Banks of
cean, or any he good For-
he good For- at River, made the Fatigues I suf-
called *Missil* d very easie to me, tho I had no o-
s, or neck o- her Provisions than what I could kill
ues broad, an- ith my Gun. I spent Eight Days in
ake of the *Hu* ny Journey, and from thence went in-

to the Southern Canal I have spok^{the f}
 of where I Landed. I discover'd the^{is,}
 a large Plain between the Lake of the^{mb}
Hurons and that of the *Illinois*, and the
 fine Settlement belonging to the Jesuit *Ti*
 I found there also our Deserters, w^{nd 4}
 appear'd, at first, very stubborn and th^e
 disaffected, but were at last perswaded th^e
 to return with me to *Missilimachin*^{Illino}
 where I understood that *M. la Salle* had du^e
 Sailed from thence towards the end abo^e
September, for the Bay of *Puans*, wher^e *Salle*
 he arriv'd the 8th of *October*, as I have th^e
 been informed since. ed to

Bay of
Puans.

This Bay of *Puans* is formed by the
 overflowing of the Lake of the *Illino* and *M*
 occasion'd by a great River, which falls fr^e
 into this Lake. This River call'd *Ous* to co^e
 coming comes from another Lake about adv^e
 100 Leagues distant; from which come *Fre*
 another River, which falls into *troquoi*
Mississipi; and therefore this Lake may be
 be lookt upon as a Communication betw^e
 tween *Canada* and the Gulph of *Mexico* led t^e
 as one may see by the Map. port for

M. la Salle being arrived in that B^e kind
 took some new measures, and sent his furt^e
 his Bark, laden with Furs, to *Niag* angly d^e
 and embarked again in Canoos with *M. la Sa*
 venteen Men and a *Recollect*, to go to his Situ^e
 ter.

Salle.

M. De La Salle.

25

I have spok^d the further end of the Lake of the *Illinois*, where he arriv'd the first of *November*, 1679, and landed at the Mouth of the *Illinois*, and the River of the *Miamis*.

This Country lies between the 35th and 40th degrees of Latitude; is bounded by *Deserters*, and the *East* by *Virginia* and *Florida*; and at last persuad^d the other side by the *Iroquois* and the *Missilimachin Illinois*. The Soil is very fertile, and at *M. la Salle* produces all sorts of Corn and Fruit; towards the end it abounds also in Cattle and Fish. *M. la Salle* visit^d the Inhabitants, and find^d them as I hang their Temper tractable, endeavour^d to gain their Friendship by Presents.

They exchanged some Merchandises, and *M. la Salle* managed this Trade with so much prudence and dexterity, that he call'd *On* to convince them, it would be a great advantage for them to Trade with the *French* than with the *English* or the *Iroquois*.

However, as he observ'd that this Communication was inconstant, and easily interrupted upon, he thought fit to build a Fort for his Security, and to make there a kind of Magazine for the execution of his, and sent him further Designs, which was accordingly done with all convenient speed, *M. la Salle* having chosen an advantageous Situation at the Mouth of the River.

The Country of the *Miamis*.

The

The impatience I had to re-join M. la Salle with the fifteen Men I had brought back to their Duty, obliged me to make all the haste possible, but the want of Provisions, and the contrary Winds obliged us to land within Thirty Leagues of our Fort, where we found Acorns and some Staggs, wherewith we refreshed our selves. My Men were so harassed, that I could never persuade them to embark again the same day, which obliged me to embark alone with our Pilots, promising them to return speedily. The Weather being very stormy, we spent six days before we could reach the Fort *Miamis*, where I gave an Account to M. la Salle of my Discoveries. He received me very kindly, but told me withal, that he had been better pleased to see me arrived with all his Men.

These last words seem'd to me a Command, and therefore after having refreshed my self, I went again into my Canoo, but I was hardly Fifteen Leagues off, that I was met by a violent Storm, in which our Canoo was overturned and then set to rights again, and at last driven upon the shore, from whence we went over Land to meet

our Men arrived the having spent them together in *Miamis*. M. la Salle Men together as a Design of disappointment but an end of life, so the ground of all use of all him, and of M. la Salle months past of Defence and Canoo the Native aged the interests, in the *Illinois*. was above The only embark upon a Hill lake of the above Fort out

re-join M. Men at the place appointed. We
 Men I had arrived there the next Morning, and
 obliged me having spent the rest of the Day to get
 le, but the them together, embarked again, and
 e contrary me in less than one day to Fort
 thin Thirty *Miamis*.

we found M. la Salle was very glad to see his
 wherewith Men together, looking upon this Re-
 Men were suit as a necessary Supply to carry on
 r perswade s Designs, and yet these very Men
 same day, disappointed them, and some time after
 alone with ut an end to his Discoveries, and to his
 to return life, so that the Men alone, upon whom
 eing very e grounded his hopes, were the only
 before we use of all the Misfortunes that befell
 , where I m, and of the Tragical end of his Life.

alle of my M. la Salle having in less than two
 very kind- Months put his Fort in a good posture
 e had been f Defence, as well to protect his Barks,
 d with all nd Canoos, as to defend himself against
 he Natives on the Land side, and in-
 me a Com- aged the chief of the Nation into his
 having re- interests, resolved to advance as far as
 n into my he *Illinois*, whose nearest Habitation
 y Fifteen as above 100 Leagues from our Fort.

by a vio- The only way to go to them, was to
 anoo was embark upon a River, which springing
 ghts again, om a Hill within six Leagues of the
 ore, from ke of the *Illinois*, becomes Navigable
 d to meet above Forty Leagues from our Fort, and
 our falls

*River of the
 Illinois.*

falls into the *Mississipi*, after a course
 200 Leagues. We left our Fort, and
 the Country of the *Miamis* in the begi-
 ing of *December*, leaving only ten Men
 to secure our Magazines; and having
 carried our Canoes and Equipage over
 Land, arrived four days after upon the
 River of the *Illinois*, where we Embarked
 to the number of Forty four Persons
 without reckoning Three *Recollets*.
 We fell down the said River, by easy
 Journeys, the better to observe the
 Countrey, and supply our selves with
 Provisions. The Banks of that River
 are as charming to the Eye, as useful for
 Life. The Meadows, Fruit-Trees, and
 Forests, affording every thing that is
 necessary for Men and Beasts, so that
 being amused by that agreeable variety
 we spent six days from the *Portage* (that
 is the place where we Embarked) to
 the first Village of the *Illinois*, called
Pontdalaria, consisting of above 50
 Cabins, where we found no Inhabitants.
 We went ashore, and viewed their Cab-
 bins or Cottages, which are made with
 great pieces of Timber, interlac'd with
 Branches, and cover'd with Bark. The
 inside is more neat, the Walls or sides
 as well as the Floor, being finely mat-
 ted.

A Village of
 the Illinois

Even

Salle.

M. De La Salle.

29

after a course every Cottage has two Apartments,
ft our Fort, and herein several Families might lodge,
mis in the beg and under every one of them there is a
g only ten Meve or Vault, wherein they preserve
es; and havin their Indian-Corn, of which we took a
Equipage ovfficient quantity, because we wanted
s after upon t provisions.

ere we Embarked We continued our Voyage, and above
ty four Personirty Leagues lower fell into a Lake
three Recollected Pond above seven Leagues in Circuit,
River, by ea here we caught excellent Fish; and
o observe th following the stream, fell again into the
ur selves wi hannel of the River, and found our
of that Rivives between two Bodies of Savages,
ye, as useful to were Encamped on both sides the
uit-Trees, and ver. They had no sooner discovered

thing that but they run to their Arms, and put *The Illi-*
Beasts, so thmselves in order of Battel, after ha- *nois put*
ceable variety g sent their Wives and Children into *themselves*
e Portage (th Woods. We put our selves like- *in order of*
Embarked) in good posture, and brought our *Battel.*
Illinois, call noos upon a Line, and advanced to-
of above 50rds the Shore in that order. The Il-
no Inhabitantis observing our Countenance, and
wed their Canng naturally inclin'd to Peace, con-
are made whted themselves to ask us, who we
nterlac'd wi re? We answered by our Interpre-
th Bark. T that we were Subjects to the King of
Valls or side nce, and come to make them know
finely matte Master of Heaven and Earth, and
Ever offer

offer them the Protection of our great Monarch; adding, that if they would put themselves under his Protection, they should live happily, and free from the Insults of their Enemies. We told them besides, that though their Country was plentiful, they wanted Industry to enjoy the Advantages of it, and therefore offer'd them our own, provided they would have Commerce with us. The *Illinois* having heard our answer and Proposals, received us not as Savages use to do, but as Men well bred and civiliz'd. They express'd as much as they could, their Veneration for our King; they presented us with a *Calumet*, the Signal or Badge of Peace among all those Nations, as it has been already observed. They use the way of *Singing* or *Dancing* the *Calumet*. When they sing it, they drive a Pole into the Ground, and every one brings in to the place what he hath taken from the Enemy, of which they make a kind of Trophy, and sing about it their Warlike Expeditions and glorious Feats. They call *Dancing* the *Calumet*, when they Dance about that Trophy after the *Singing* is over.

They accept
our Propo-
sals.

Salle.

M. De La Salle.

31

tion of our gr We answer'd their Ceremonies and
hat if they wo Complements by all the demonstrations
er his Protect of Joy we could think on, and some
ily, and free fr presents as tokens of our Friendship. We
emies. We told them, that Necessity had forc'd us
ugh their Co to take some *Indian* Corn out of their
ey wanted In village, for which we gave them some
antages of it, Toys and Brandy. This Convinc'd
n our own, them of our Sincerity, and sending for
e Commerce wh their Wives and Children, made prepa-
g heard our ations to entertain us with all the So-
ceived us not emnity and Magnificence they are ca-
at as Men w able of, with Beef and Stag, and all
hey express'd orts of Venison and Fowls. We were
their Venerat ery liberal on our side of our Brandy,
resented us o that the Feast lasted three whole days;
Badge of Pe uring which, we made several Dischar-
s, as it has b es of our Arms, at which they were
y use the w ighted, but our good Words and kind
e Calumet. Wh expressions confirmed them in the good
a Pole into pinion they had of us. The familiar
e brings in t itles of Brothers, Friends, and Com-
n from the B des were not forgotten; and even
e a kind of T me of us were Adopted into the chief
their War families amongst them; so that through
s Feats. The natural Inconstancy of the *Ameri-*
et, when th ns, we discover'd in the *Illinois*, a
phey after eat Humanity, and a good dispositi-
to Civil Society.

They enter-
tain us.

They

*Character
of the Illi-
nois.*

They are naturally Careſſing, Flatterers, and Complaiſant, but on the other ſide Cunning, and dexterous at all Exerciſes. They are generally ſpeaking well ſhaped, ſtrong, and of a brown or tawny Complexion. Hunting is their great Delight, which makes them indocible. They love Women with exceſs, and Boys above Women, ſo that they become by that horrid Vice, very effeminate. 'Tis obſervable however that notwithſtanding that vicious Inclination, they have ſeveral Laws to puniſh that infamous Vice. For as ſoon as a Boy has prostituted himſelf, he is degraded in a manner of his Sex, being forbidden to wear the Apparel or Name of Man, and to make any Office or Function fit for Men, even nor ſo much as to be ſuffered to go a Hunting. Theſe are therefore look'd upon as Women and confin'd to their Employments, where whom they are even more ſlighted and hated than by Men; inſomuch that theſe Wretches become, by their Crime the ſcorn and contempt of both Sexes. Thus without any help, but natural Reſentment, they are ſenſible of their Crime and have made theſe Laws as a Bridle to maſter their brutiſh ſenſuality, tho

flattery, Flattery, but on the other
 but on the other, generous at all Ex-
 generally speaking, d of a brow
 Hunting is their Assembly with the motives of his Em-
 makes them in bassie. He told them that it was not
 women with ex the Interest alone of his Nation and
 Women, so the theirs, but rather of all the *Americans*, *His Dis-*
 erid Vice, ver which had occasion'd his Deputation, *course.*
 able however seeing that they were informed that the
 at vitious Incl *French* were come with a Design to sub-
 al Laws to pu due the whole Country of the North-
 For as soon *America* to the Gulph of *Mexico*;
 himself, he that to succeed therein, we pretended
 his Sex, being not only to make use of our own Forces,
 parel or Nam but likewise of the *Americans* themselves;
 any Office that in order thereunto, we had con-
 en nor so much tracted a strict Alliance with the *Iro-*
 hunting. The *quois* their common Enemies: That the
 n as Women Fort we had erected on their River, was
 ployments, one beginning of our Tyranny, and a
 e slighted an place of Refuge 'till the arrival of our
 nsomuch the Confederates: That if they expected a-
 y their Criminy longer, and gave us time to join to-
 of both Sexes gether, their Miseries should be past re-
 t natural Remedy, and therefore advised them to
 their Crime prevent us, and destroy us whilst it was
 vs as a Brid in their power.
 usuality, tho

The crafty
Contrivance of
the Illinois.

These Calumnies of *Mausolea* made as I great impression on the credulous *Illinois* and so much the more, because his Accusation agreed exactly with what our own Men had told them. But doubtless the Reader expects an Account of the Reason that put the *Hoquois* upon this Villainous trick; and if we remember what has been already said of the Character of that barbarous Nation, it is not easie to discern, that they were afraid that the *Illinois* would grow too powerful by their Commerce with us, and be enabled by the use of Fire-arms, to make head against them, and therefore they made use of this *Mausolea* to accuse us as he did, in order to incense the *Illinois* against our Nation, and prevent thereby our Settlement in the Country.

M. La Salle, who relied upon the Faith of the late Reconciliation, knew nothing of this new Storm; and having no other Thoughts than to settle his Union with the *Illinois*, rose very early, and went directly to the Camp of the *Illinois* with his best Friend, where he was mightily surpriz'd to see a general Uproar, and that no body would speak with him. The Conjecture was

ver

Mausolea made as I have said before, they hate all manner of restraint; they marry several because his Ac Wives, and to preserve Peace and Union in their Families, they marry commonly Sisters or near Relations. They are very Jealous, and punish the Infidelity of their Wives with a great severity. *Hermaphrodites* are very common amongst them, but whether it be an effect of the Climate or no, I do not pretend to determine. Women, and the prostituted Boys I have spoken of, work with us, and fine Mats for hanging their Cottages, while Men go a Hunting or till the Ground for sowing of *Indian Corn*. Their Country is situated along the River, which bears their Name, and are dispersed in several Villages. This complement in the Nation amounts to about 1500 Souls, amongst whom we computed 500 fighting Men.

M. La Salle being sensible of the strength of this Nation, thought that nothing was to be neglected to keep them in amity with us; but at the same time that it was necessary to provide ourselves against their Inconstancy. Therefore he ordered a Fort to be built upon a rising ground near the River, which was in a little time in a posture of defence. However he was in great pain for his

A Fort
built.

D

Bark,

Bark which he had sent back from the Bay of Puans to Niagara, of which he had no manner of News. This, together with the malice of some of our Men made him so melancholy, that the Pale-ness of his Face betrayed the grief of his Heart; but as he was very Courageous, he conceal'd it as well as possible, contenting himself to manifest it by the Name of *Crevecœur* (breaking Heart) which he gave to his Fort.

We had however hitherto no great cause of Complaint; we had happily carried on our Discovery to 500 Leagues beyond Fort Frontenac, and made several Forts for the Communication and Security of our Settlements. Most of the Savages were entred into our Alliance, and the fiercest among them, had not so much as offer'd to stop our Progress, so that we found no Enemies but our selves, and our own Divisions which proved at last a fatal source of great Misfortunes and Miseries.

Murmurings of the French.

Most of our Men being discouraged by a long and tedious Voyage, the end whereof they could not see, and weary of a wandring Life in Forests and Desarts, where they had no other Company but Brutes, and Savages, with

out

back from the out any Guide, Carriage, and Provisi-
 of which he had ons could not forbear murmuring a-
 This, together gainst the Author of so tiresome and
 ne of our Men-terillous an Enterprife. M. La Salle,
 y, that the Pale-whose penetration was extraordinary,
 l the grief of his discover'd immediately their dissatisfa-
 ery Couragious tion, and try'd all possible means to
 s possible, con-vent the consequences thereof. The
 ifest it by the lory of the Enterprife, the exemple of
 eaking Heart the Spaniards, the hopes of a great Boo-
 rt. y, and every thing else that may en-
 herto no great age Men, we made use of to incou-
 re had happily ge them, and inspire them with better
 to 500 Leagues entiments; but these Exhortations, like
 nd made seve- il poured upon Fire, served only to
 unication and crease their dissatisfaction. What said
 ents. Most obey? must we always be Slaves to his
 into our Alliance prichio's, and be continually bubb'd
 ong them, had y his Visions, and foolish Expectati-
 o stop our Pro-ns? and must the Fatigues we have
 o Enemies but therto undergone be used as an Argu-
 v- n Divisions ent to oblige us to go through more
 atal source of ills, to gratifie the Ambition or Folly
 iferies. a merciless Man, who upon fair pre-
 g discouraged nces has transplanted us into this new
 Voyage, the World amongst Brutes. We are very
 not see, and r from our Country, without Provi-
 ife in Forests ons or any other help; but our case
 had no other all be ten times worse, if we follow
 savages, with e wandring Inclinations of a Man,
 out D 2 who

who is resolved to go to the further end of the World. He has made himself Rich by our Perils, and to our own loss. What then have we to do, but to put a stop, by his Death, to our further Miseries, and take possession of what he has gained by our Fatigues? These were the Arguments these Villains used to incourage themselves to the horrid Crime they had resolved upon; but having upon second thoughts, considered the consequences of their violent Design, they thought it would be more safe to incite the *Illinois* against him, that he might perish by their Hands.

The Artifices of the Malecontents.

To compass that villainous Design they made a shew of an extraordinary Friendship to the Savages, and let them know, that by reason of the good Entertainment they had received from them, they thought themselves obliged to acquaint them with the dangers they were threatned with. They told them that M. La Salle was in a strict Alliance with the *Iroquois*, their ancient and implacable Enemies; that he was advanced into their Country to discover their Situation and Strength; that the Fort he had built was to bridle them, and that the Voyage he pretended to make

Salle.

M. De La Salle.

37

to the further en-
as made himse-
l to our own los-
do, but to put
our further M-
ion of what h-
ues? These we-
lains used to i-
he horrid Crim-
n; but having
considered th-
violent Design
be more safe
him, that h-
lands.
villainous Desig-
an extraordinar-
es, and let the
f the good E-
received from
mselves oblig-
e dangers the-
They told the-
a strict All-
eir ancient an-
at he was ac-
ry to discov-
gh; that th-
bridle them-
pretended t-

ake to Fort Frontenac, was in order to
quaint the *Iroquois* with their Condit-
and conduct them into their Coun-
y, to destroy altogether their Nation,
iving agreed together to share the
oty amongst them; concluding, that
iving revealed to them the wicked De-
ns of their Commander, they left it
their own prudence, to take what
asures they should think necessary for
eir Security.

Tis very easie to guess what impres-
on such a Discovery wrought upon a
Weak and Credulous People, who be-
ved without any further Inquiry,
whatever our Villains had told them.
they broke off immediately their Socie-
with us, and lookt upon us, but chiefly
on our Chief, as their greatest Ene-
es, and resolv'd upon our Ruin. M.
Salle suspected the cause of their
istrust, and was sensible of the dan-
er he was expos'd to, but did not
ow from whence it came. His great
ourage was not however cast down,
d trusting to his good Conscience,
ent boldly to the Chief of the Sava-
s, and told them, That he observ'd
ch an alteration in their proceedings
ith him, that he could not but be con-

cerned at it; and therefore desir'd them to tell him the Motives of their Mistrust, and to consider whether they were well ground'd, or only an Artifice of their common Enemies, who were jealous of the good Correspondence that was between them.

And how they were discovered. The *Illinois* could not refuse that reasonable Demand, and therefore told him, that his own Men had discover'd his Designs against them, in conjunction with the *Iroquois*. M. La Salle, surpriz'd at the Perfidiousness and Treachery of his Men, made use of such convincing Arguments, to prove the Malice of his Accusers and his Innocence together with the impossibility of the League with a Cruel Nation, who were bound by no Law nor Sense of Humanity; that the *Illinois* were perswaded of the sincerity of his Intentions, and never the Motive of his Enemies, and therefore we became Friends again.

The arrival of Mauso-lea. The Calm was hardly settled, but that was disturb'd by a more dangerous storm than the former, by the arrival of one *Mauso-lea*, a secret Emissary of the *Iroquois*, of the neighbouring Nation of the *Mascontans*, a Cunning Seditionous and Eloquent Man. This preten-

fore desir'd them, and therefore exhorted to weigh every
 es of their Ming, and enquire into the Embassie,
 whether they suspected *Mausolea* was sent by the
 or only an *Aroquois*, and not by his own Nation;
 Enemies, warning them, in the mean time, that
 good Correspondence was come to protect them against the
 on them. *Iroquois* and their other Enemies.

refuse that re These Reasons being accompanied *The effect*
 therefore with the assuredness which a good *of his Dis-*
 had discovered, had all the expected ef- *course.*
 in, in conjunct; insomuch that *Mausolea* himself,
M. La Salle, that of Fear, or remorse of Conscience,
 fness and Treasoness'd, that the *Iroquois* had spread
 use of such collose Reports among the *Mascoutans*, on
 prove the purpose to excite a general Insurrection
 his Innocence against us, and owned that the safety of
 possibility of the *Illinois*, and of his own Nation, de-
 Nation, who depended on their Union with us; where-
 ense of Humour upon the *Illinois* made us all the Pro-
 ere perswaded that in the World, that they would
 entions, and never renounce our Alliance, nor give
 es, and therefore any more to the Suggestions of our
 again. common Enemies.

tled, but that This Peace and good Correspondence *M. la Sal-*
 ore dangerous being thus happily restor'd, *M. la Salle* *le divides*
 by the arriv turn'd all his Thoughts towards his *his Men,*
 Emissary Enterprise, and finding himself near the
 bouring Nation great River *Mississipi*, he resolved to di-
 viding his Men to carry on at once his
 This pretended Discoveries to the *North* and to the
South,

South, by means of that River, resolving for himself to fall down to the Sea, and to send some body else toward the source of the River. But as he was thus preparing himself, his Treacherous Men plotted to put a stop both to his Journey and to his Life, and to poison him and his best Friends at once. They pitched upon *Christmas-day* for acting this Villainy, and found means to put some Poison into the Pot, to cut off at one blow, all such as might have avenged the Death of their Captain, and likewise to remain the sole Masters of the Fort, and of all the Effects that were therein.

*M. la Salle
Poisoned by
his Men.*

The Dinner was hardly over, that *M. la Salle* and his Friends found themselves very ill. They fell into Convulsions and other Symptoms, which discover'd the true cause of them; whereupon they took a Dose of good Treacle, and by this quick remedy prevented the effect of the Poison, in so much that all recover'd.

*They run
away.*

This was too plain to be denyed, and too horrid to be forgiven, therefore the Rogues ran away to avoid the just punishment they deserv'd; and tho' *M. la Salle* sent after them, it was not possible

at River, referre to overtake them, the thick Forests
down to the Sea, giving them a fair opportunity to
else toward the Sea, to make their escape. The desertion of
But as he was these Villains weaken'd our Band, but
his Treachery were soon recruited by several
stop both to hunting Savages, who engag'd them-
e, and to poison selves into our Service, and likewise
s at once. The some French Men who were dis-
s-day for acti s'd and wandering in the Woods,
d means to put that our number was in a little time
ot, to cut off considerably increased.

Things being thus settl'd, M. la Salle
ply'd himself to the execution of his
Captain, and object, and appointed Mr. *Dacan* for
sole Masters of the Discovery of the Country along the
he Effects that the *Mississipi*, to the North-east, with four

Mr. Dacan
appointed
for the dis-
covery to
the North

ndly over, that French Men, two Savages, and Father
ds found them *Jouis a Recollect*. He gave 'em Arms,
fell into Com muniton, and some Merchandise
ptoms, which trade with the Nations. They Em-
f them; wherearked on the 28th of February 1680,
Dose of good d fell down the River of the *Illinois*
quick remedy to the *Mississipi*, and from thence went
he Poison, in that great River for 450 Leagues
d. together to the *North*, and came with-
be denied, and seven Leagues of its Source, landing
therefore the w and then on both sides to view the
d the just pu ntry, and by what Nation it was
and tho' M habited.

was not pos-
sible

The

The source
of the Mis-
sissippi.

The *Mississippi* springs out of a Fountain on the top of a Hill in the Country of the *Iffati*, about the 50th degree of latitude: It receives so many Rivulets that it becomes Navigable for Boats within six Leagues from its Source. The Country along its Banks is Inhabited by several Nations, as the *Hanetons*, *Iffati's*, *Oua*, *Tintonha*, and *Nadouesta*. Men who received Mr. *Dacan* with all the kindness imaginable. He traded with them, and increased his number with several Savages, who offered to accompany him. He set up likewise the Kingdom of Arms about two Leagues from the source of the River, upon a great Tree in sight of those Nations, as a Mark that they became Subjects to his Majesty. He made also several Settlements, and one, among the rest, among the *Iffati's* where some *French* Men desired to remain.

M. Dacan
takes posses-
sion of
that Coun-
try.

This Gentleman, charmed with the docility of these Nations, and engaged by the advantageous Trade that he had with there, advanced to the Lake of the *Arjenipoits*, which is about Thirty Leagues in Circuit. That Nation received our Men kindly, notwithstanding their natural fierceness, and there to four

Salle.

M. De La Salle.

47

gs out of a Fort Founded there an Habitation, and ano-
all in the Countr among the *Chongaskabees*, or Na-
50 degree of Lat of *Strong Men*, who are Neigh-
to many Rivoleurs of the *Arsenipoits*.

igable for Bo While Mr. *Dacan* was carrying on M. la Sal-
om its Source. The Discoveries, M. la Salle took his le takes
anks is Inhabite of the *Illinois*, to return to Fort leave of the
the *Hanetons*, *Antenac*, in order to get a new supply Illinois.

and *Nadouestis* Men and Ammunition, and likewise
Dacan with all view in what condition were his

He traded wits, Magazines and Settlements, and
his number witen the building of a new Ship,
offered to accomsh he had order'd to be made. He

likewise the King out the 8th of *November*, 1680, and
agues from three days after arrived to the Village
pon a great T the *illinois*, where he resolved to

ns, as a Maild another Fort on a rising ground,
ects to his Morder to command the *Miamis*, *Ou-*
eral Settlements *amis*, *Kikapous*, *Aisnous*, and *Mascou-*

t, among the; and to serve likewise for a Place
ch Men desir Refuge to the *French*. This Design,
of prudent and advantagious, was

armed with however attended with some fatal Con-
s, and engagements, as we shall see hereafter.

ade that he n Having taken all the observations that
to the Lake thought necessary; he continued his

is about Thirney, and met, about two Leagues A Treache-
ry of two of
his Men.

that Nation in the Village of the *Illinois*, two of
notwithstan Men, whom he had sent two Months
ness, and there to *Missilimachinac*, to endeavour

four

to

to get Intelligence of his new Ship. These Rogues pretended to have done their utmost, without having been able to Discover what was become of him, tho' they had burnt it themselves, and having sold the Effects that were on board to the *Iroquois*. M. la Salle suspected presently that it was lost, but however, appeared as unconcern'd as before, and sent me in a Letter a Draught of the Fort he had marked out, ordering me to work thereupon immediately.

These Villains, who had already sent us to the *Iroquois*, made a great hast in order to improve the absence of our Commander to their advantage, and delivered me the Letter of M. la Salle, which being very pressing, I went immediately to the place I was commanded to, exhorting my Men to Peace and Union, and leaving the Fort under the Command of the most Faithful. The place M. la Salle had pitched upon, was a Rock very high, the top of which was even and of a convenient space, so that it commanded the River, and the Country round about. I had already drawn some Lines, and made other preparations to build it, when I heard that the Villains had seduc'd and perverted me.

Our Fort
Plunder'd.

a Salle.

M. De La Salle.

41

of his new Situation, and therefore M. la Salle was
ded to have done with great perplexity, and did not know
t having been able to do. Some were of Opinion to re-
s become of him into the Fort 'till this new Treachery
themselves, and discover'd, but he would not hear-
ts that were to this Advice, lest his Retreat
M. la Salle suspected would confirm the Accusation of his E-
as lost, but honours; and took a Resolution more
ncern'd as before of himself, tho' more dange-
ter a Draught. He went up boldly to the Assem-
ed out, ordering the Chief of the Nation, and ex-
immediately. He told himself as well as he could in
had already for own Language, and much to this
e a great hardship.

the absence of our Friends,

M. la Salle, who Cannot but wonder at your Inconstancy; Mr. la Sal-
vent immediately we parted very good Friends last Night, le's Speech
commanded this Morning I find you almost in Arms to the Illi-
peace and Union st me; no body speaks to me, and every nois.
nder the Count threatens me. What new Crime have
hful. The plaintiff committed? or rather by what new Impos-
d upon, was have you been incensed against me? I
p of which wonder myself, and therefore if ever I
t space, so that acted against the Interest of your Na-
, and the Count, you may do what you please, I am at
already drawn mercy. The Savages considering
other preparatory Speech, and his Countenance, were
heard that tho' most perswaded with his Innocence,
perverted me told him the Subject of the Em-
bassie

bassie of *Mausolea*, who was at that present, whereupon M. la Salle directed his Speech to him in this manner: *You accuse me of an Alliance with a barbarous and Treacherous Nation, but are your Proofs? If you have any? out; but if you have none, do you the Illinois will believe your malicious Contrivances.*

Mausolea had certainly no Proof, endeavoured to make out his Accusation by some Circumstances; as his former Commerce with the *Iroquois*; the Fort he had built upon the River of the *Illinois*; and his return to Fort *Frontenac*, concluding that though these were direct Proofs, yet they were substantial Indications of his Design. It was very easie for M. la Salle to answer all his Arguments, and to shew that the *Iroquois*, being jealous of their good Correspondence, and sensible that their Union would enable them to make head against them; had hir'd this Emissary to create these Divisions. He advised them to consider every thing, and how the *Iroquois* had subdued, by their Artifices, the *Miamis*, the *Quiaquons*, and the *Mastigons*, who sent this pretended Advice to M. L.

La Salle.

who was at that

M. la Salle di

im in this man

Alliance with a

s Nation, but

ou have any?

none, do you

ieve your mal

only no Proof,

out his Accusa

es; as his for

Troquois; the

the River of the

to Fort *Front*

gh these were

ey were subst

Design. It

lle to answer

new that the

their good Co

e that their U

make head aga

Emissary to cr

advised them

and how the

their Artifices

and the *Ma*

etended Adv

M. De La Salle.

49

of our men, insomuch that they had
plundered our Fort, and carried away
what was most valuable in it. I return-
ed immediately, and found only seven
or eight *French Men* in the Fort, who
had been so honest as to detest the Vil-
lany of their Comrades, but not able
to prevent it. I confess my Heart was
almost broke, when I consider'd the
Condition we were in, without any
help amongst Savages; but having
found a good quantity of Ammunition,
with Arms left in the Fort, I thought
the Cause was not altogether Desperate,
and encouraged my Men, by the hopes
of a quick return of *M. La Salle*, and all
other Arguments that I could think on,
not forgetting the glory they had gain-
ed by their Fidelity, and the Reward
they might expect, if they supported
his Disgrace with Courage. I took
an exact Account of the Damage we
had sustained, and sent it to *M. La Sal-*
I redoubled in the mean time my
care and application to preserve our
Correspondence with the *Illinois*, and
by these means we put our selves ve-
near in as good a posture as before,
the number of Men excepted.

M. La Salle having received these

E

dismal

what
 dismal Tidings, made a great search *among*,
 ter those Rogues, and pursued them the
 closely, that part of them surrendred our
 themselves, and the rest were taking
 He caused the most Seditious to be wou
 Hang'd, and pardon'd the rest. He; bu
 sent the Messenger back to me, with th
 a promise of a quick Supply, and On Vom
 ders to tarry for him in the Fort. Mem
 whole Year however elapsed in th his
 expectation, but our number being increas
 creased, by the arrival of some *Frenche* th
 Men, and the conjunction of some Savane of
 ges, we would have wanted nothing, an
 at all, had not a sad and unforeseen.
 Accident disappointed our Measures. T

The Iro-
 quois come
 to attack
 the Illi-
 nois.

Our loss was hardly repaired, when to tv
 we fell into a greater danger; for in the *agance*
 Month of *September* 1687, we discovred *Ag*
 red, within a quarter of a League (two ex
 the Camp of the *Illinois*, about 60 *Illinois*
Iroquois armed with Bows, Swords, Haft upv
 berds, and a great many of them withem, o
 Fire-arms. This unexpected Armurage
 frightened the *Illinois*, and revived the cep the
 suspicion of our Correspondence withted
 their Enemies; and I must confess, eter,
 was in a great perplexity, knowing not adv
 what to do in so nice a juncture. Howest W
 ever having determin'd my self, I d
 whatever

alle.

whatever I could to encourage the *Illinois*, and told them that I would go to a great search among them, and told them that I would go to pursue them to the Camp of the *Iroquois*, and endeavor them to surrender to bring them to Terms; assured them that if I could not succeed, I would share the danger they were taking, but that they had no time to lose, and therefore advis'd them to send their Men, Women and Children away, and put themselves in good posture of defence. This Proposal convinc'd them of the sincerity of our Intentions, and therefore they gave me an Interpreter, and one of some Savage of their chief Men to accompany me, and be Witness of my Negotiations and unforeseen.

Our Measures. The Army of the *Iroquois* divided into two Bodies, and commanded by *Agancourte*, Chief of *Tsonnontouans*, and *Agoustot* Chief of the *Desoutages*, of a League two experienc'd Generals. That of the *Illinois*, about 600 was not 500 strong, and we were armed with Swords, Haft upward of 25 *French* Men amongst them, divided in their Battalions, to inspect and revive them by our Example, and in the best order we could. I parted from our Army with my Interpreter, an *Illinois*, and two *French* Men, knowing and advanced toward the *Iroquois*, whole Wing moved, at the same time, toward myself, I did
 whatever

*A Custom
observ'd a-
mongst the
Savages.*

ward our Right, where our Men appeared very resolute, and prepar'd to make a vigorous Defence.

As soon as I came near them, they shot at us, but by chance none was wounded, whereupon I sent back the Illinois, and the two French-men, taking upon my self all the peril attending such a Deputation. As soon as I came at a convenient distance, I shewed a Collar, it being the Custom amongst the Savages, to make all their Proposals with Collars, the same being the Symbol of Peace, Union, and Alliance. I advanced upon the publick Faith of the Badge, but I was no sooner in the Camp but I was seized by those Villains, one of whom took my Collar, whilst another design'd to stab me with a Knife, but it pleas'd God, that the Knife slid along one of my Ribs, which saved my Life. The most Rational, or rather the least Brutish of 'em, rescued me from their Hands, and after having stop't the Blood with a kind of Balsom, conducted me to the middle of their Camp with my Interpreter; where they asked me the Subject of my coming.

King,
Tho' other; and
the loss
as to fu

lle.

our Men ap-
d prepar'd to

r them, they
ce none was
sent back the
b-men, taking

ttending such
s I came at a
wed a Collar
ongst the Sa

roposals with
ne Symbol of
ce. I advan-
Faith of the
in the Camp

Villains, one
whilst ano-
with a Knife
he Knife sh-

which saved
nal, or rather
ued me from
ng stopt the

m, conduct-
their Camp
ere they ask-
oming.

Thoth-
he loss of my
as to succeed

M. De La Salle.

'Tho' my strength was considerably

bated by the loss of my Blood, my

Courage was not cast down, neither

as I daunted by their Number and

Threats. I complained therefore, first

of their unjust Proceedings, and viola-

tion of their Publick Faith; and then of

their coming, without any provocation,

against the Sa- attack a Nation, which was in Con-

travels with deracy, and under the Protection of

the King of *France*, my Master; there-

fore I intreated them to return home, if

they had any respect for that Prince;

and that they would look upon the *Il-*

linois as their Friends, since they were

united with us, that whatsoever con-

spired our Destruction, conspir'd our

destruction, that they

ought to consider the danger of their

enterprize; the *Illinois* being about six

hundred men, and the *French* above

two thousand; and that my Mediation and Ex-

hortation to Peace, were not the effects

of our Fear we had for them; conclu-

ding, that I intreated them to make

Peace with the *Illinois* in the Name of

the King, and of Count *Frontenack* their

Governor; and that I should not complain

of the loss of my Blood, if I was so hap-

py as to succeed in my Negotiation.

13

My Depu-
tation to the
Iroquois.

*The Success
of it.*

While I was thus arguing, the two Armies were skirmishing; and some time after, an *Iroquois* came to give Advice to the General; that their Right Wing began to give ground, and that they had observed some *French* men among the *Illinois*, who had made a great fire upon them. This Advice came very unluckily for me; for the Savages were so incensed against me, that they presently talk'd of killing me. I was preparing my self to suffer every thing, but observing a young rash *Iroquois* standing behind me with a Razor in his Hand, and knowing the Custom of that Cruel Nation, which is to cut off their Enemies Head, and then take off the Hair and Skin like a Cap, which is amongst them the greatest Trophy, I did not doubt but this young Warrior had a great fancy to my Hair, which he touch'd now and then, and lest he should do it too soon, I told him, that he ought, at least, to expect the Order of his Masters. *Tagancourte* would have me put to death, but *Agoufot* being particular Friend of M. La Salle, opposed the other General, and by a kind of Miracle, Mercy perhaps, for the first time, prevail'd with this Barbarous Na-

tion

2. on; and it was resolved to send me back to the *Illinois*, and tell them they were disposed to a sincere Peace and Union, giving me a fine Collar of *Porcelain*, as a Token of their sincerity. They protested that they would for the future, live in Peace with the *Illinois*, and look upon them as Brethren, since they were Children of the Governour of *Canada*, which they did not know before.

The consideration of the danger I had escaped, Cured me almost of my Wound, and gave me sufficient strength to return to our Camp. I met about half the Way, Father *Gabriel de la Rivière*, and Father *Zenobe Membré*, who almost despaired of seeing me any more, and therefore could hardly express the joy they had for my happy return. We went together to the *Illinois*, to whom I deliver'd the Message of the *Iroquois*, but advis'd them withal not to trust so much to their Words and Presents; for I could not persuade my self, that so Cruel and Ambitious a Nation would return Home without any other advantage, but that of having made Peace with the *Illinois*, whom they pretended to subdue; which was rather a dishonour, and therefore I lookt

The Resolution of the Illinois, upon my return, and their Desertion.

upon all their Protestations as an Ambassage. The *Illinois* were fully perswaded with what I told them, of the Infidelity of the *Iroquois*; and yet they resolv'd to return the Present by an Ambassie. They called, in the mean time a Council, to take the necessary measures for their Defence; but their young Warriors being satisfy'd with the Glory they had gained in the first Attack wherein they repulsed their Enemies, what I would not venture a second Fight, and most of them left their Camp. The others being thus weakened by the Desertion, ran away upon the approach of the *Iroquois*, who plundered their Camp.

Being thus forsaken by our new Confederates, we retir'd into our Fort, but the *Illinois* being re-inforced by fresh Men, appeared again two days after upon a rising ground in good Order and resolved to fight; whereupon the *Iroquois* thinking they were more numerous than at first, and having tryed their Valour in the former Attack, desired me to interpose my mediation for a Peace, which I accepted; and they gave me one of their Chiefs as an Hostage.

ions as an *Am* Hostage. I went to the *Illinois* with Father
 enemies. *Genoble*, and told them the Proposals of *Both Parties accept my mediation.*
 fully perswaded the *Iroquois*; and that I had brought one
 of the *Indians* of their Chiefs for Hostage. The *Illinois*
 yet they were very well pleased with my
 sent by an *Envoy* Message, and assured me that they were
 the mean time sincerely disposed to make Peace with
 necessary me the *Iroquois*; then they gave me a full
 out their your power to make it upon what Terms I
 with the *Gl* should please, and promis'd to send
 the first Attack immediately an Hostage for confirming
 their Enemies what I should say. Both Parties being
 and Fight, and well disposed, I took some refresh-
 Camp. Then, and returned to the *Iroquois*,
 ened by the whom I told that I was empowered to
 the approach great with them, and desir'd that we
 undered the might immediately enter upon the
 Treaty.

our new *Con* They were pleased with it, and the *Imprudence*
 our Fort, but Hostage of the *Illinois* being arrived at *of an Illi-*
 ced by fresh the same time, confirm'd every thing *nois.*
 o days after that I had said, so that the Treaty
 good Order would have been concluded in few
 ereupon the hours, had not the Imprudence of this
 re more *no* *Illinois* broken all my measures. This
 having tryed inconsiderate Fellow began to praise the
 Attack, de Valour of his own Nation, and their
 mediation for Generals; but owned, that being
 ; and they hardly 400 Men, they lookt upon their
 s as an *Ho* Proposals of Peace as a favour, which
 stage. they

they would acknowledge by some Presents of Beavers and Slaves. This foolish Confession undeceived the *Iroquois* who having believed what I had told them of the number of the *Illinois*, were glad to make Peace, and in some fear of their Enemies. They began then to speak very big, and complained in very hard words, I had deluded them and done them a great injury, saying that they would have got a considerable Booty, if they had not been deceived.

I must confess I was put to a plunge but having recovered my self, I answered, That what I had said before and what the *Illinois* said then was true for the *Illinois* were above 600 Men upon their Arrival, and at the first fight but that a great number having deserted since that time, it may be that their Number was reduced to 400. That I had no other intention but to bring both Parties to a right understanding That they were Masters of the Camp of their Enemies, and might impose upon them what Conditions they pleased, since they offer'd themselves to buy the Peace. They approved, or at least seemed to approve my Reasons, and

by some Pr
res. This for
ed the *Iroquois* Chiefs of his Nation ; that they desir'd
at I had told them the next day in their Camp,
the *Illinois*, were conclude the Treaty.

in some fear They came accordingly the next
began then turning, with a great quantity of Bea-
plained in various Skins, and several Slaves, which
cluded they presented to the *Iroquois*, who re-
injury, saying they'd them very kindly, and promis'd
or a consideration to restore them their Camp and Habi-
not be less than, which they confirmed by some
resents of three Collars of Porcelain
to a plumed Furrs. The first Collar signifying
y self, I and they begged Pardon of the Go-
said before the Governor of *Canada*, for having attacked
men was true, Nation who was under his Protection ;
600 Men upon the second signifying the same civility to
the first fight M. La Salle ; and by the Third, the *I-*
having deserted the *Illinois* swore an eternal Alliance with
be that the *Illinois*. These Presents being mu-
400. They mutually exchanged, both Parties retired.

out to bring Whilst these two Nations were gi-
understanding each other mutual Marks of a
of the Camp sincere reconciliation, I discover'd that
impose upon the *Iroquois* were secretly making
pleased, since Canoes, to follow the *Illinois* along the
to buye the River, and exterminate them ; and being
or at least asked by one of the Chiefs of the *Illinois*,
reasons, and what I thought of their Reconciliation?
I told him very frankly, that the Pro-
mises

The interest
between
the Iro-
quois.
and the Il-
linois.

The Treachery of the
Iroquois.

mises and words of that treacherous
tion were not to be relyed upon; th
I did not doubt but that the Cano
which they were getting ready w
so much secrecy, were designed again
them; that therefore I advis'd them
retire into another Country with the
Families, and fortifie themselves in som
advantagious Post, 'till the *Iroquois* we
gone away. The *Illinois* approved of m
Advice, and went back to his Nation
and I retired into our Fort.

*The Iro-
quois make
Presents to
the French.*

The *Iroquois* having consider'd how
they had used me, thought fit to gi
us some satisfaction, and therefore on the
10th of *September*, eight days after the
arrival, they desir'd me and Father Z
noble to come to their Council, where
being sat, they brought six Packs o
Bever-skins, and told me, that their
Nation offer'd us those Presents, and
desir'd us to give the two first Packs
in their Name to Count *Frontenac* their
Father, and assure him that they would
trouble no more the *Illinois*, knowing
they were his Children; that they
gave me the third to serve me as a
Plaister for my Wound; that the fourth
was Oil to rub our Legs during our Voy-
age. By the fifth, they exhorted us to

Worship

Salle.

t treacherous
ved upon; t
that the Can
ing ready w
designed again
advis'd them
ntry with the
mselves in for
he *Iroquois* we
pproved of m
to his Nation
ort.

onsider'd ho
ht fit to gi
erefore on th
ays after the
nd Father Z
ouncil, where
fix Packs o
e, that their
resents, and
o first Packs
rontenac their
they would
is, knowing
that they
ve me as a
t the fourth
g our Voy-
orted us to
Worship

orship the Sun; and by the last, they
ired us to march away the next
and retire to our *French Habita-*

returned them our thanks, in the *Their An-*
ne of our Nation, for the respects *swer.*
had expressed for the Count de
atenac, and Mr. la Salle, and for
r good Entertainment, and like-
for their Oil and Plaister, but I
ght fit to ask them when they
mselves designed to march away,
when they would restore that
mp to the *Illinois*, according to their
mise. This Question did not please
m, and after a general grumbling,
told me, that since I was so curi-
they would satisfy me, and that
would depart, after having de-
d some of our Brethren, or else
me of the *Illinois*. As soon as I un-
stood this Answer, I thrust back
ar Present with my Foot, and told
an, that seeing they had such a De-
I would accept none, adding with-
that I would march away without
r Order or Leave, when I should
ok fit. The Chiefs of the *Iroquois*
ng heard my reply, stood up, and
us that we might retire. There
was

was amongst them one *Abenaguis*, whom I had been acquainted, who told me, that they were very much angry with me, and advis'd us to retire with all the haste we could to our Fort, which we did accordingly, and there all the Night long upon our Guard, being resolv'd to defend our selves to the utmost extremity.

When we saw our selves safe, Father *Zenoble* and I made several Reflections on the Dissimulation and Infidelity of that Nation, and likewise on the danger we had been expos'd to in their Council; and I remember that that good Father blam'd my proceedings; and said, That in those nice occasions, we ought to be more pliant, in hopes to find a more favourable opportunity. I agreed with him in general, but insisted, that this Principle admitted of few exceptions, and that assuredness and courage were more prevailing upon barbarous men, than a more prudent walk. In the mean time we advis'd what was fit to be done in this juncture; and being unable to defend us against so many enemies, we resolv'd to quit the Fort the next day. I Embarked the morning with two *Recollects* and

The French
quit the
Fort.

French
avages c

Salle.

M. De La Salle.

63

e Abenaguis, w
ainted, who
ery much an
us to retire w
ld to our F
ingly, and f
pon our Gua
nd our selves

Having equally divided our Arms,
mmunition, and Goods, we Embark-
the Eleventh of *September*, 1687, ve-
early, and about Five Leagues

om the Fort, we went ashore to re-
r our Canoo, and dry some Furs,
hich the Water would have spoiled.

we were busie about it, Father

abriel told me that he would take

walk along the Shore; and I ad-

sed him to keep in our sight, be-

use we were surrounded with E-

mies; but the charming Prospect of

at Country ingaged him a little too

r, so that seeing he did not return,

he began to mistrust that he was fal-

n into the Hands of the Savages. Fa-

ter Zenoble and I advanced into the

Woods to look for him, but could not

discover what was become of him, not-

withstanding we fir'd our Arms, and

made all the Night long a great Fire

to give him notice of the place where

we expected him. We understood

ence, that he was met by a Band of

Savages called *Quicapous*, who murder-

ed

Father Ga-
briel mur-
dered by
the Sava-
ges.

ed him, and sold, some time after, Breviary to a Jesuit, from whom I learned these particulars. Thus dyed this Holy Man, in the seventieth Year of his Age, by the Hands of those wretched Men for the sake of whom he had left his Native Country, and suffer'd many Fatigues.

We waited for him 'till the next day about Noon, but having no hope of his Return, we Embarked again, and after one Months Navigation, landed within two days Journey of the Lake of the *Illinois*, into which we carried over Land our Equipage. We embarked again on the 20th of *October*, and ten days after, were forced to land, by contrary Winds, within 20 Leagues of a great Village, called *Potavalam*, where we found no other Provision but Acorns.

I was sick of an Ague, and my legs were so swoln, that we could not reach the Village I have spoken of 'till the 10th of *November*. We found no booty in it, nor any Provisions, but having, by good chance, advanced into the Country, we met with a good quantity of *Indian Corn*, which enabled us to Imbark again. The Winds were so cross

time after, that we were oblig'd to come a Shore
 from whom few days after, where having found
 s. Thus dy me fresh foot-steps, we followed the
 twentieth Year track, and came to another Village of
 s of those ve the *Pontoulamis*, which was likewise
 from he had le abandoned, but however afforded us
 and suffer'd some Provisions, which were sufficient
 to maintain us 'till our arrival at the
 Bay of *Puans*, which was towards the
 'till the ne latter end of *November*.

Having already described this Bay,
 having no hope need not repeat it now, but I must
 barked again need not repeat it now, but I must
 vigation, land add, that there is a Creek in it called
 ourney of the the Creek of the Sturgeons, because of
 which we ca the prodigious quantity of that sort of
 ge. We en Fish that is catch'd in it. We refresh-
 of *October*, and ed our selves in that place for several
 ed to land, b days with the *Pontoulamis*, who en-
 20 Leagues tertaind us with scorched Beef and
Potavalami Stagg. We diverted also our selves in
 er Provision Hunting of Beavers, which afforded
 us a great satisfaction.

and my leg The Country about the Bay, being
 ould not reach watered by an infinite number of Ri-
 n of 'till the vulets, lined with great Trees, and the
 und no bod Woods being full of Alpen-trees,
 ut having, b the Branches and Leaves whereof are
 to the Coun the dainty food of Beavers. Those
 quantity of Creatures are very numerous in those
 ed us to Im Parts.

were so cross
 the

*An Account of
Beavers.*

The Beavers are, as every body knows, Amphibious Creatures, who cannot live without Air, Water, and Land. They are near as big as Sheep, but not so tall, their legs being very short; but so nimble, that they come nothing short of Apes for dexterity. They have a Muzzle or Nose, and strong Teeth; their Body is covered with thick Hair, and pretty fine, but their Tail is made up of a kind of twisted Hair, which forms a figure like that of a Triangle, and serves them as a Trowel to beat the soft Earth, they make use of to build their Habitations.

The Instinct or Industry of those Creatures is almost incredible, and therefore I am sensible that many will question the Truth of what I have to say, about it, however, I may assure the Reader that I do not Romance in the least. When they have a mind to make a new Settlement or Habitation, and have found a proper place for it, which is commonly in the Channel of a River, provided it be not too deep, or too broad, they look for a Tree on the Bank of the said River, leaning a little towards the Water. They meet and divide

le.

every body
creatures, who meet together in a Circle, and because
Water, and their number is always odd, it seems
as big as Sheep that they hold a Council, to know
what is fit to be done. The first thing
that they come to be done, is to cut down the Tree
for dexterity they have pitched upon, but not hori-
zontally, but in such a manner that it
is covered by fall into the very place they have a
very fine, bend to, that is cross the River, to
of a kind of, or at least to abate the Rapidity
as a figure like the stream. If the Branches hinder the
flow of the Tree to lye in the Water,
the soft Earth they cut them likewise, and then make
with their Hands a perfect Dike or Bank with Mud and
level together, leaving now and then
a try of those places open for the Water, lest
it should overflow their Bank.
Many will question the Tree cannot reach the other
side, they have to say, they fell another Tree over a-
ny assure them it will join that, and make a per-
formance in the Causeway or Bridge. This Work
being compleated, they build their Ha-
bitation, and Caves near that place, and
for it, which they employ nothing but mud in the fol-
lowing manner; they lay a Layer of it,
too deep, beat it very hard with their Tails,
for a Tree, then another, and so on successive-
ly, layer by layer, till it is about three Foot high; they
water. They then smooth it and Polish it very handsomely,
mean while divide it into three several Apart-

M. De La Salle.

67

ments, which have communication of with the other ; one of them is to lie the second for their Provisions, and the third serves them for a necessary House. They make a Canal or subterranean Aqueduct from the River to one of their Apartments, in which they have a kind of Pond, wherein they hang their Tail, for otherwise they could not live. This Canal serves also for another use, for when they hear a noise, they make their escape through that place into the River. Every one is obliged to work, but if any one has his Tail excoriated or otherwise hurt, he lays it flat upon his back, to show that he is unable to work.

*How they
Hunt Bea-
vers.*

When the Savages go a Hunting they follow the Rivers, and as far as they discover any Causey, Bridge or Bank, they may be sure that Beavers are not far off. They come as near as they can, but as soon as Beavers see or hear them, they run through their Canal into the River, but as they must breathe from time to time, the Savages soon shoot them, it be in Summer time ; for in Winter they use another Art to catch them. They make holes in the Ice, and

ving b
Habita
come
and the
ive by
Havi
Ten D
Provisio
evente
hinac,
d back
Savages
some Pr
y muc
of our
that p
much.
remity,
to endea
it pleas
Savages
was, wh
belongin
we met
that plac
receiv'd
Zenoble
had a Se
Bay, th
his Cha

alle.

munication of
them is to lie
visions, and
necessary Hou
r subterrane
ver to one
which they ha
in they he
se they cou
rves also for
they hear a
scape throu
r. Every d
if any one
otherwise hu
back, to the
rk.

go a Hunting
, and as for
ausey, Brid
sure that
They cou
as soon as
em, they
o the River
from time
shoot them,
or in Win
catch the
Ice, and

ing beat out the Beavers from their
Habitations into the River, they must
come to breath through those Holes,
and then the Savages catch them a-
live by the Tail.

Having refreshed our selves above
Ten Days in this place, and taken in
Provisions, we Embarked again on the
seventeenth of *December* for *Missilima-
chinac*, but eight days after were forc-
ed back by a contrary Wind. The
Savages were gone away, but had left
some Provisions, which we wanted ve-
ry much; for the Ice and the malady
of our Men obliged us to continue in
that place, where we suffer'd very
much. Finding our selves in that ex-
tremity, I advanced into the Woods
to endeavour to find some relief, and
it pleased God that I met with two
Savages, of the Nation of the *Outno-
was*, who conducted me to a Village
belonging to the *Pontoulamis*, where
we met several *French*-men settled in
that place, by whom we were kindly
receiv'd, as also by the Savages. Father
Zenoble understanding that the Jesuits
had a Settlement in the bottom of the
Bay, thought it was more becoming
his Character, to pass the Winter a-
mongst

mongst them, than in company of the Savages, and went thither two days after our arrival; but we continued 'till the next Spring in that place, and liv'd very comfortably.

*How they
Hunt Bulls.*

We diverted our selves at Hunting wild Bulls in the beginning of March, the Grass being already grown. These Bulls are near twice as big as ours, the Hair looks like a fine Fleece, and is very long; their Horns are bent backwards, and extraordinary long, their Eyes are likewise larger and bigger than those of our European Bulls, which make them look terrible. They go always by Doves of three or four Hundred in each. When the Savages go a Hunting, they encompass a Drove of these Bulls, and one of them comes creeping as near as he can, and then stands up, making an Out-cry, which frightens away the whole Drove; the Savages being in a Circle, they cannot escape without being shot; but as they become very fierce and dangerous when they are wounded, the Savages shoot them in the Thigh or the Shoulder, to prevent their coming upon them, and when they are down, they break their Heads with Clubs. As they are excellent

alle.

company of
her two da
we continu
hat place, an

Hunting will
of March, the
own. The
big as our
e Fleece, an
orns are be
ordinary long
rger and big
European Bulls
terrible. The
three or four
the Savage
pass a Drove
them comes
n, and then
t-cry, which
Drove; the
they cannot
but as they
gerous when
vages shoot
shoulder, to
them, and
break their
ney are ex
cellent

M. De La Salle.

71

cellent Marksmen, they never miss,
and twenty Men will sometimes kill
forty and Fifty Bulls.

That which is wonderful in this, is
the havock, which the Shot sent by the
Savages makes; for besides the ex-
tremity and swiftness of the Stroke, the
force of it is very surprizing, and so
much the rather, because it is nothing
but a Stone, or a Bone, or some-
times a piece of very hard Wood,
pointed and fastned to the end of an
Arrow with some Fishes-glue, that
causes this terrible effect. When the
Savages go to War, they poison the
point, or extremity of their Dart, so
that if that remains in the Body, Death
follows of necessity; the only Re-
medy in this case, is to draw out
the Arrow through the other side of
the Wound; if it goes quite thorough,
if not, to make an aperture on the
other side, and so to draw it through;
after which they know by instinct, cer-
tain Herbs, the application of which
draws out the Venom, and Cures
it.

I stayed all the Month of *March* in
this place: Father *Zenoble* came back
with me at Spring, and we re-embark-

ing at the Creek we had left, came
to Land at *Missilimachinac* in the
beginning of *April*, with a design to stay
there for M. de la Salle. From the
11th of *September*, 1681, when we
took our leaves of the *Illinois*, to the
1st of *April*, Seven Months were slip-
away; during which time, M. de
Salle, upon the Advice that I had giv-
en him by my Letter, was com-
ing down to the *Illinois* with a good Re-
cruit, with intention to help us. The
Iroquois having Advice of his Descent,
and being afraid of being hemm'd
between two Armies, were retir'd
and the *Illinois* were again entred
to their Possessions. However M.
la Salle found but some few, the re-
st being gone to winter in the Woods.
he exhorted those that remained,
to call their Country-men, assuring them
he would build a Fort that should
shelter them from the Invasion of
their Enemies; he visited the Fort of
Crevecoeur, which was still in the same
condition, and placed therein a small
Garrison of Fifteen or Sixteen *Fren-
ch* and a Commander, with Ammunition
and Arms. After this, he went
again up the River to the great *Village*

The Fort of
Creve-
coeur.

and left, came age, whither many Families of the
Illinois in the *Illinois* were returned; he laboured
 design to stand hard upon the inclosure of his New
 Fort, and having understood by some
 Scouts, that I had taken my way to-
Illinois, to the wards *Missilimachinac*, he set forward
 his were slip again to join me, having left some
 me, M. de Soldiers and Pioneers at the intended
 at I had g Fort, to continue his Work and de-
 was com fend that Post.

a good Re He came not to *Missilimachinac* 'till
 elp us. Th about the Fifteenth of *August*, in the
 of his Descen Year 1682. There we took new mea-
 g hemm'd sures to perfect the Discovery we had
 were retire begun. We must needs think forth-
 in entred with of making some new Provision
 wever M. for so long a Voyage. It was with this
 ew, the re Design, that after Six Days rest, M. de
 the Woo *la Salle* set out in a Canoo for *Fronte-*
 remained, *ac*, Father *Zenoble* and I going along
 assing the with him; having sailed happily the
 that thou f day, we landed at a Village cal-
 Invasion d *Ti-conou*, belonging to the *Iroquois*.
 the Fort M. de *la Salle* Traficked there with
 in the fam some Skins, and having ordered me
 rein a sma to stay for him there, with Father
 xteen Fren *Zenoble*, he went on board the *Canoe*
 Ammunition for *Frontenac*. There he found his
 he went Bark ready, and stored her with a-
 e great V bundance of Ammunition and Provisi-
 ons;

ons; he lifted there some new Souldiers, and eight days after, sent me his Bark laden with fresh Men, good Merchandise, and such things as were most necessary. The Father and I went on board, and landed the first Day at *Niagara*, below the Fall of the River: There we were forced to put our Baggage and Merchandise upon Sledges, and so conduct them to the Lake *Herié*, where we re-embark'd in a Canoo to the number of Twenty Persons, as well Souldiers as Mariners, together with our best Merchandise. After Three days Sail, we landed at the side of the River of the *Miamis*, where having lodg'd our selves in Huts, I had time to reassemble there some *French* and some *Savages*, *Abenaguis*, *Loups*, *Quicapous*, and others. There I augmented our Provisions by Hunting, and I barter'd some of our Commodities for *Indian Corn*.

There it was that M. de la Salle came to rejoin us towards the end of *November*; the day of his Arrival we fell down the River of the *Miamis* in a Canoo, to the Mouth of another River named *Chicacon*; and we went
up

le.
 ew Souldiers,
 me his Bark
 good Mer-
 gs as were
 ather and I
 d the first
 the Fall of
 ere forced
 Merchandise
 Et them to
 e-embark'd
 of Twen-
 s as Mari-
 e Merchan-
 , we land-
 ver of the
 odg'd our
 o reassem-
 some Sa-
 Quicapous,
 ented our
 d I bar-
 es for In-

Salle came
 d of No-
 rival we
 Miamis in
 another
 we went
 up

up it again to a small Harbour, which
 is but a League from the great Ri-
 ver of the *Illinois*. Having put on
 shore in this place, we passed the
 Night with a very great Fire; for
 the Cold was so sharp, that the next
 day the Rivers were froze and un-
 navigable. We were obliged then to
 have recourse to the Sledge, to car-
 ry our Baggage to the Village of the
Illinois, where we found things in the
 same state that M. de la Salle had left
 them; only the Village was better
 peopled; which gave us opportunity
 to defer our Intrigues a little, and to
 renew our Provisions.

The Rivers being still block'd up
 with Ice, we found our selves oblig'd
 to begin again our Journey by Land;
 the Third day of *January*, 1683. we
 had pusht on our way to Thirty
 Leagues below. There the Weather
 grew mild, and the Ice melted, so
 that Navigation appearing commodi-
 us, we went on Board a Canoo,
 the Twenty Fourth of *January*, and
 fell down the River of the *Illinois*,
 to the River *Mississipi*, where we arri-
 ved the second of *February*.

The

*The River
of the Illi-
nois.*

The River of the *Illinois*, reckoning from its first Carriage to its dis-emboguing into the River, is at least 160 Leagues Navigable. The adjacent parts are as pleasant as fruitful; one sees there Animals of all sorts, Stags, Hinds, Linces, Wild Bulls, Goats, Sheep, Hares, and infinite more, but few Beavers. As to the Trees, they are nothing but Forests of High Trees with great Walks, which seem drawn by a Line; besides Elms, Beech, Plane trees, Cedars, Walnut and Chesnut trees; one sees there whole Plains cover'd over with Pomgranate-trees, Orange-trees, and Lemmon-trees; and in one word, with all kind of Fruit trees.

In many places there are to be seen large Vines, whose tendrels being twisted about the Branches of huge Trees, bear Bunches of Grapes of an extraordinary bigness.

Being Embarked upon the *Mississippi* we followed the Course of this great River; six Leagues from the Mouth of the River *Illinois*, we met with that of the *Ozages*, the Banks of which and places thereabouts, are no less agreeable and Fertile; 'tis true, it

Water

Water
Mud a
of Miss
for mo
Brinks
nut-tree
number
vers; a
is very
up tow
inhabite
in Skin
the Mo

The
Ten L
lage of
with no
retired
made t
let 'em
After t
we arri
at the
abachi,
throws
ty Leag
It is by
come to
ons of
lay in

Water carries so great a quantity of Mud along with it, as to change that of *Mississipi*, and make it all Muddy for more than Twenty Leagues. Its Brinks are bordered with great Walnut-trees; one sees there an infinite number of Foot-steps made by the Beavers; and the Hunting for them there is very great and common. Going up towards its Source, its Banks are inhabited by Savages, who trade much in Skins; we passed one Night at the Mouth of this River.

The next day, after we had sailed Ten Leagues, we came to the Village of the *Tamaoas*, where we met with no body at all, the Savages being retired into the Woods to Winter; we made there however some Marks to let 'em know that we had pass'd by. After that, continuing our Voyage, we arrived, after a Course of 3 Days, at the Mouth of the River of the *Ouabachi*, that comes from the East, and throws it self into the *Mississipi*, Eighty Leagues from that of the *Illinois*: It is by this River that the *Iroquois* come to make War upon the Nations of the South. In this place we lay in Huts one Night, and after a Course

*The River
of the Ouabachi.*

Course of Sixty Leagues, following still our great River, we came to land at a Bank Inhabited by Savages, who are called *Chicacha*. Here it was that we lost a *French*-man of our Company, named *Preudhomme*. The search we made for him during Nine days, gave us an opportunity of discovering several Nations, and of Building a Fort in this place, to serve as a Rest and Habitation for the *French* in that fine Country.

*Hunters
well re-
ceived of
the Sava-
ges in Chi-
cacha.*

During this Interval, Two of our Hunters met with two of the Savages *Chicacha*, who offer'd to conduct 'em into their Village. Our Men, led by a Spirit of Curiosity, follow'd them; they were very well received, and after laden with Presents, and were intreated by the Principal among them, to procure that our Commander will honour them with a Visit. Our People being very well satisfied with their reception, made their report of it to M. de la Salle, who the next day went himself with Ten of his Company; he received there all the good treatment that could be expected from People the most civiliz'd; and had no trouble to inspire 'em with Sentiments

ments
the Ki
freely
This
is able
Men;
Plates,
for a fl
Reason
Vifage
blets of
their F
with B
Sea Sho
Every
them;
tame He
M. de la
good R
made 'e
ment,
Hatchets
People.
pectation
himself
lived up
found us
ed him
Fort, wh
and gav

M. De La Salle.

79

ments of submission and Obedience to the King. These Savages also consented freely to the finishing of our Fort.

This Nation is very numerous, and is able to furnish out Two Thousand Men; they have all Faces flat like Plates, which is reckoned among them for a stroke of Beauty; it is for this Reason they take care to make the Visage of their Children flat with tablets of Wood, which they apply to their Foreheads, and gird very hard with Bands: All these Nations to the Sea Shore give themselves this Figure.

The Nation of the Chichacha.

Every thing is very plentiful with them; Corn, Fruits, Grapes, Olives, tame Hens, *Indian Hens*, Bustards, &c. M. de la Salle having received such good Refreshment there, and having made 'em, by way of acknowledgment, a Present of some Knives and Hatchets, he returned to his own People. At last, after Nine days expectation, *Preudhomme*, who had lost himself in the Woods, where he had lived upon nothing but Wild Fowl,

found us again; M. de la Salle entrusted him with the care of finishing the Fort, which he called after his Name, and gave him the Command of it;

Preudhomme lost in the Woods, & again the French.

after

Following still
to land at
Savages, who
it was that
our Compa-
The search
Nine days,
discovering
Building a
as a Rest
ch in that

vo of our
the Sava-
o conduct
Men, led
w'd them;
, and af-
were in-
ng them,
nder will
ur People
ith their
of it to
ay went
ompany;
od treat-
ed from
and had
h Senti-
ments

after which he took his Course upon the same River towards the end of the Month of *February*.

*An Alarm
caused by a
Drum.*

We were three Days without disembarking: The fourth after having made Fifty Leagues, we came to a Village of the *Cappa*: We had scarce set foot on Land, but we heard a Drum beat, forthwith fancying we saw the Enemy at our Heels, we threw ourselves into our Canoos, and went over to the other side; and so we immediately made a Redoubt to secure our selves from any surprize.

*The good
treatment
which the
Savages
Cappa
gave the
French.*

The Savages came to view us in a Canoo; we sent some of our Men to 'em, to present them with the *Calumet*; they accepted it freely, and at the same time offered themselves to conduct us to their Habitations, and promised us all manner of assistance. *M. de la Salle* was very ready to go thither; in the mean time one of the two Savages went before, to give notice of our arrival to those of his own Nation. Their Prince, accompanied with some of the chief of 'em, came forward to receive us. As soon as he saw *M. de la Salle*, he saluted him in a very grave and respectful manner;

offer'd

offer'd
upon
him by
his Co
long w
sensible
let him
tentio
out the
to mak
the *Fre*
the Vil
titude o
were f
Line.
declare
were f
Discove
ceive it
Then t
mation,
to testi
Prince
perfect
the Or
ed him
him, an
the goo
this, h
Presents

ourse upon
the end of

without dif-
ter having
came to a
had scarce
rd a Drum
faw the E-
threw our
d went o-
and fo we
ubt to fe-
prize.

iew us in
our Men
th the Ca-
ely, and at
mselves to
tions, and
assistance.
dy to go
one of the
o give no-
of his own
companied
em, came
oon as he
ed him in
l manner;
offer'd

offer'd him any thing that depended upon him or his Nation, and taking him by the Hand, led him towards his Cottage. M. de la Salle walking along with him, testified to him how sensible he was of his Civilities, and let him understand his Design and Intentions, which tended to nothing else but the glory of the true God, and to make known to him the Power of the *French King*. Being arrived at the Village, we saw a very great multitude of People, in the midst of whom were some Archers drawn up in a Line. The Prince making a little halt, declared to all the Assembly, that we were sent by the King of *France*, to Discover *North America*, and to receive its People under his Protection. Then there follow'd a general Acclamation, by which the People seem'd to testify their Joy: As soon as the Prince had assur'd M. de la Salle, of the perfect submission of all his People to the Orders of the King, he conducted him into his Cottage, and gave him, and those of his Company, all the good treatment possible. Besides this, he made him very considerable Presents, namely, abundance of *Indian*
G Corn,

Corn, and other necessary Provisions, with which M. de la Salle was very well satisfied, as well as with all his other Civilities. This Nation was scarce any thing of Savage; they give Judgment according to their Laws and Customs; every one there enjoys his own Goods in particular.

The Manners and Customs of the Cappa.

The Nation of the Akancéas.

Eight Leagues from hence are the Akancéas, whose Land is above sixty Leagues over: They are divided into several Villages, almost at equal distances. The Cappa gave us two Guides to carry us to the First, which they call *Togengan*; it stands upon the Bank of a River, and there we were very well received. Two Leagues from this Town, we fell down in a Canoo to that of *Torimant*; and six Leagues from this last, to another called *Ozotoni*. We were equally well received in every place; and as our arrival had already made a noise in all the Country, we found a very numerous Assembly of People in this place, which caused M. de la Salle to set up the Arms of the King, with a Shot of our Artillery. The Noise and Fire of our Arms impress'd such a respect upon all the Multitude, and threw

The Arms of the King set up at the noise of the Artillery.

them in the presence of the King. This is the Degree through which Grain, &c. The result is wonderful, seen, and Cottages erected with mind of Animals but one self in a shall please pitch upon times and some other is dead, ing; but into a great make of is always Brutes. About tion, are give place

Provisions,
he was very
with all his
Nation was
; they give
r Laws and
e enjoys his

nce are the
above sixty
divided in-
st at equal
ve us two
First, which
ands upon
there we
two Leagues
down in a
; and six
to another
qually well
and as our
a noise in
a very nu-
e in this
la Salle to
ng, with a
Noise and
such a re-
and threw
em

them into such a Consternation, that
the Prince, on the part of his Nation,
swore to us an inviolable Alliance. The Cli-
mate of this
This Climate and that of the *Capp: Country.*
is the same; it is about the 34th
Degree of Latitude. The Country
throughout does generally abound in
Grain, Fruits, and Wild Fowl of all sorts.
The temperature of the Air is won-
derful, there is never any Snow to be
seen, and but very little Ice: Their
Cottages are built of Cedar, all mat-
ted within: They have no deter-
min'd Worship; they Adore all sorts
of Animals, or rather they Worship
but one Divinity, which discovers its
self in a certain Animal, such as it
shall please their *Jongleur*, or Priest, to
pitch upon; so that it will be some-
times an Ox, sometimes a Dog, or
some other. When this visible G^d
is dead, there is an universal Mourn-
ing; but which is presently changed
into a great Joy, by the choice they
make of a new Mortal Deity, which
is always taken from amongst the
Brutes.

*The Religi-
on of its
Inhabitants*

About Sixty Leagues below this Na-
tion, are the *Taencas*, a People that
give place to none in *America*, either

Taencas.

*Crocodiles
in great
numbers.*

for Force or Beauty of Climate. The *Akanceas* gave us Guides to conduct us thither, and going on Board a Canoo, we still follow'd the Course of the great River. After our first days Voyage, we began to see some Crocodiles along the brink; They are in a very great number upon these Banks, and of a prodigious bigness, some being Twenty or Thirty Foot long. To see so monstrous an Animal, who would believe that it comes into the World but like a Chicken, being hatched of an Egg! only it is observed, that it grows as long as it lives. We took notice that they fled when we pursu'd 'em, and that when we fled they pursued us; we dispersed them with our Pusees, and killed some of 'em. The day following being arriv'd over against the first Village of the *Taencas*, M. de la Salle sent me to the Prince, to give him notice of his Arrival, and gave me two Guides of the *Akanceas*, and two *Abenaguas* to be my Interpreters.

As this Village stands on the other side of a Lake, which is Eight Leagues in Circumference, and half a League over, we were forced to take a Ca-

mate. The noo to cross it, which we perform'd
to conduct in two Hours. As soon as we land-
on Board ed, I was surpriz'd to see the Gran-
the Courfe dure of the Village, and the Order of
er our first the Cottages; they are plac'd in di-
to see some vers rows, and in a streight Line,
; They are round about a large space, being all
upon these made of Earth, and covered over with
us bigness, Mats of Cane: We presently took
thirty Foot notice of two fairer than the rest, one
us an Ani- was the Princes Palace, the other
at it comes the Temple; each of them was a-
a Chicken, bout forty Foot square, the Walls ten
only it is Foot high, and two Foot thick; the
s long as it Roof, in the form of a Cupilo, was
t they fled cover'd with a Mat of divers Colours:
that when Before the Prince's Palace stood a De-
we disper- ten Men Armed with Half-pikes. As
and killed soon as we came up, an Old Man ad-
dressing be- dressed himself to me, and taking me
e first Vil- by the Hand, led me into a great
la Salle sent square Hall, the Floor and sides of
him notice which were covered with a very fine
two Guides Mat; at the further end of the Hall,
Abenaguis over against the Entrance, was a very
handsome Bed, with Curtains of a fine
the other stuff, made and woven of the Bark of
nt Leagues Mulberry-trees. We saw the Prince
a League of this People upon this Bed, as upon
ake a Ca- his Throne, in the middle of four
noo

*The Gran-
dure and
Order of the
fine Village
of the Sa-
vages.*

*The Prince
of the Ta-
encas.*

*A Description
of the
Women of
these Savages.*

handsome Women, and encompassed with above Sixty Old Men, Armed with Bows and Arrows; they were all Cloath'd with very fine White Garments; that of the Prince was adorned with certain Tufts of Wool of different Colours; the rest were all plain. The Prince had upon his Head a Diadem of woven Rushes, very curiously wrought, and enriched with large Pearls, and rais'd with a Tume of various Feathers; all that were about him were bare-headed: The Women were dress'd in Cloaths of the same Stuff; they had upon their Heads little Rush Hats, adorned with several Feathers, and had all Necklaces of Pearl, and fine Ear-Pendants of the same; they had Bracelets of woven Hair, and several other Jewels which set off their Attire: They were not quite Black, but Brown, their Villages something flat, their Eyes Black, sparkling, and pretty large; their Shape fine and free; and they all appear'd to me of a smiling and very pleasant Air.

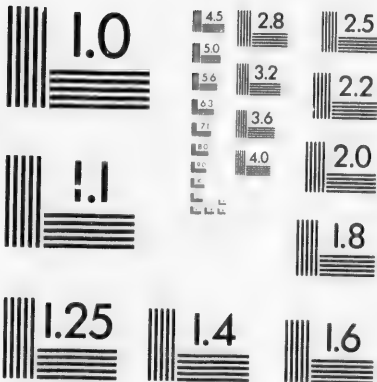
Being

Being with the
I address
rable P
the Na
having
King of
the King
covery
end to
Governm
came to
and Prot
Countrie
That if
lives in
much to
Yoke, as
power of
ly in the
to them
Wealth:
their Tre
more adv
Not to U
put them
improve
in our Co
become th

Being surpriz'd, or rather charm'd,
 with the Beauties of this Savage Court,
 I address'd my Speech to the venerate
 Prince, and spoke to him in the Name of M. de la Salle. That A Discourse address'd to the Prince of these Savages.
 having the Honour to be sent by the King of France, the most potent of all the Kings upon Earth, to make a Discovery of all the Nations of America, and to invite them to live under the Government of so great a Prince, I came to offer them our Friendship and Protection; to which the upper Countries had all freely submitted: That if we did pretend to settle our selves in the Country, it was not so much to bring them under a rigorous Yoke, as to maintain for them, by the power of our Arms, what was already in their Possession; and to impart to them our rarest Arts and our Wealth: Not so much to spoil them of their Treasures, as to teach them a more advantageous way of using them. Not to Usurp their Territories, but put them in a way to Cultivate and improve them, and to instruct them in our Commerce. In short, not to become their Lords and Masters, but



(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

to Establish a Brotherly Friendship with them.

The Prince all this while hearken'd with great Attention, (and one of our *Abenaguis* having given him to understand what I said) embraced me, and with a smiling Countenance, told me, That after the Account I had given him of our great Monarch, he could not but conceive the greatest Respect and Veneration for him; that he should the next day see *M. de la Salle*, and that he would give him more particular assurances of it. Whereupon I presented him in *M. de la Salle's* Name, with a Sword inlaid with Gold and Silver, some Cases of Razors, Cizars, and Knives, and some Bottles of *Aqua vita*. I cannot express the Joy and satisfaction he receiv'd these small Presents with. But I took notice at the same time, that one of his Wives, who had a pair of the Cizars in her Hand, admir'd very much the neatness of the Work, and would now and then give me a Smile, which I fancied might be a modest way of asking me for a pair too. I took an opportunity to draw near to her, and pulling out of my Pocket a small steel

Case

Case
a pa
toise-
mire
her
her H
ing m
me re
have
but t
by us
Conve
pany,
neatly
us, g
Thorn
made
some
to her
togeth
a Silve
kets f
joy; a
two o
and th
ing t
Collar
bout h
an Off
of civi

lle.

endship with

ile hearken'd

and one of our

im to under-

ced me, and

nance, told me,

I had given

h, he could

atest Respect

n; that he

M. de la Salle,

im more par-

Whereupon

Salle's Name,

h Gold and

zors, Cizars,

ottles of A-

efs the Joy

d these small

ok notice at

F his Wives,

Cizars in her

h the neat-

would now

e, which I

est way of

I took an

to her, and

a small steel

Cafe

M. De La Salle.

89

Case of Filligreen-work, wherein was a pair of Cizars, and a little Tortoise-shell Knife, and pretending to admire the whiteness and fineness of her Garment, I slipt the Case into her Hand, and she received it, squeezing my Hand pretty hard. Which gave me reason to think, that these Women have not Hearts altogether so Savage, but that they might easily be tamed by us, and taught the Politer Arts of Conversation. Another of the Company, who was not less pretty, and neatly accoutred, drawing nearer to us, gave me to understand by the Thorns she shewed me, which she made use of to fasten her Train, that some Pins would be very acceptable to her. I gave her a paper of 'em, together with a Case of Needles and a Silver Thimble. These little Trinkets she received with a wonderful joy; and then I gave as much to the two others. She who was the finest and the most agreeable of 'em, having taken notice that I admir'd a Collar of large Pearl that she had about her Neck, took it off, and made an Offer of it to me, with abundance of civility. I refus'd it a good while, but

but reflecting upon the plenty of Pearls that is among them, and that the fishing for 'em was in the Seas thereabouts, I made no further difficulty, and after a few more offers, I accepted of it. But, in return, I gave her ten Yards of Blew Ribbon, which she valued, at least, at as high a rate.

The Night now drawing on, I was going to take my leave of the Prince, but he very earnestly desired me to stay 'till the next day, and gave the charge of me to an Officer, to let me want for nothing. I did not want much Courtship, and the desire I had to see a little of their Manners and Behaviour, made me readily enough accept of the kind offer. I was conducted into an Apartment furnished much after the rate of that the Prince was in. There they brought me a Collation of Wild-fowl, and Fish, and some Liquors, of which I tasted. All that while there was an Old Gentleman with me, who was very good Company, and especially because he resolved me all the Questions I put to him. As for what concerns their Politicks, he inform'd me, that they were in-
tirely

ty of Pearls
d that the
e Seas there-
r difficulty,
s, I accept-
I gave her
, which she
in a rate.
g on, I was
the Prince,
red me to
d gave the
icer, to let
d not want
efire I had
nners and
ly enough
I was con-
furnished
the Prince
gh me a
Fire, and
asted. All
ld Gentle-
ery good
because he
as I put to
r Politicks,
were in-
tirely

intirely govern'd by their Prince's Ab-
solute Will. That they obey'd him
as their Sovereign; that they own'd
his Children his lawful Successors;
that when he died, they sacrificed his
first or Chief Wife, the first Steward
and twenty Men of his Nation, to be
his Retinue and wait upon him in
the other World. That during his
Life, no Man drunk in his Cup, nor
eat out of his Dish, or walk'd as
he was passing by; that care was al-
ways taken, not only to clean the
Way for him, but also to strew it
with sweet Herbs and Flowers. I
observ'd in that little time I was in
his Presence, that when he spoke to
any body, they made a loud kind of
humming before they answer'd him;
and I begg'd this Old Gentleman to
tell me the Reason of it: He told
me that this was lookt upon as a
token of admiration and respect. As
to their Religion, he told me that
they Worship the Sun; that they had
their Temples, their Altars, and their
Priests. That in that Temple, there
was a Fire which burnt perpetually,
as the proper Emblem of the Sun.
That

That at the Decrease of the Moon, they carried a great Dish of their greatest Dainties to the Door of the Temple, as an Oblatory Sacrifice; which the Priests offer'd to their God, and then they carried it home, and feasted themselves with it.

As to their Customs, every Spring they go in a Body to some retir'd place, and there turn up a large space of Land, which they do with the Drums beating all the while. After this, they take care to call it the *Desart*, or the *Field of the Spirit*. And thither they go in good earnest, when they are in their Enthusiastick Fits, and there wait for Inspiration from their pretended Deity. In the mean while, as they do this every Year, it proves of no small advantage to them, for by this means they turn up all their Land insensibly, and it becomes abundantly more fruitful. In Autumn they gather their *Indian Corn*, and they keep it in great Baskets till the New Moon in the next Month of *June*: Then the Families get together, and every one invites his Friends

and

and M
Cakes.
wife;
in Fea

This
of their
and C
the Cu
and th
ther.
ly the
House.
compass
the spa
ple for
People
Wall an
on whic
own m
their E
Frontisp
ed, all
above t
of a Tr

The
Nave, p
forts of
Hearth

the Moon, and Neighbours, to come and eat
 h of their Cakes, and some Meat they get like-
 Door of the wife; and thus they spend the Day
 Sacrifice; in Feasting.

to their God,
 home, and

every Spring
 ne retir'd
 large space
 with the
 ile. After
 it the De-
 irit. And
 nest, when
 stick Fits,
 tion from
 the mean
 ery Year,
 antage to
 hey turn
 y, and it
 uitful. In
 dian Corn,
 askets 'till
 xt Month
 es get to-
 is Friends
 and

This is all I could learn that Day
 of their Religion, their Government
 and Customs. The next Day I had
 the Curiosity of seeing their Temple,
 and the Old Gentleman had me thi-
 ther. The Structure of it was exact-
 ly the same with that of the Prince's
 House. As to the out-side, it is en-
 compassed with a great high Wall,
 the space betwixt that and the Tem-
 ple forming a kind of Court, where
 People may walk. On the top of the
 Wall are several Pikes to be seen, up-
 on which are stuck the Heads of their
 own most notorious Criminals, or of
 their Enemies. On the top of the
 Frontispiece, there is a great Knob rais-
 ed, all covered round with Hair, and
 above that, an heap of Scalps in form
 of a Trophy.

The inside of the Temple is only a
Nave, painted on all sides, at top with all
 sorts of Figures; in the midst of it is an
 Hearth instead of an Altar, upon
 which

which there is continually three great Billets burning, standing up on end; and two Priests drest in White Vestments, are ever looking after it, to make up the Fire and supply it. It is round this that all the People come to say their Prayers, with strange kind of Hummings. The Prayers are three times a Day; at Sun rise, at Noon, and at Sun set. They made me take notice of a sort of Closet cut out of the Wall, the inside of which was very fine: I could see only the Roof of it, on the top of which there hung a couple of spread Eagles, which look'd towards the Sun. I wanted to go into it; but they told me that it was the Tabernacle of their God, and that it was permitted to none but their High Priest to go into it. And I was told that this was the Repository of their Wealth and Treasures; as Pearls, Gold and Silver, precious Stones, and some Goods that came out of *Europe*, which they had from their Neighbours.

After I had seen all these Curiosities, I took my leave of all those that

that
with
la Sa
Accou
had r
Tacuca
pecial
acknow
Some
toward
Barge,
Wome
on fe
them
others
of it.
a resp
that gr
sidering
thanked
him, a
it but
his Ma
doubt b
ledge h
assure h
and Pr
Tacuca's
he had

that were with me, and went back with my two Interpreters, to M. de la Salle; to whom I gave a faithful Account of the good Entertainment I had received from the Prince of the Tacucas; of his Magnificence, and especially of his good Inclinations to acknowledge the King's Authority. Some time after we saw him coming towards us, in a very magnificent Barge, with Drums beating, and the Women that attended him playing on several Instruments: Some of them were in his own Barge, some in others that went along by the side of it. M. de la Salle received him in a respectful manner, and yet with that gravity as best became him, considering the Character he bore. He thanked him for the honour he did him, and told him he did not receive it but in the Name of the Prince his Master; and that as he did not doubt but he was willing to acknowledge his Power, so he might safely assure him of his Royal Friendship and Protection. The Prince of the Tacuca's made Answer, That what he had heard of the Grandure of the French

King, and of the Valour of his Subjects, would not permit him to hesitate, in paying him in Person the Hommage which he was perswaded was due to him whom he represented; and that tho' he was a Sovereign, he chearfully submitted to our great King's Power; and that he should be glad to merit our Alliance and Protection by his Services. After these mutual Protestations of Friendship, they made each other their Presents. M. de la Salle presented him with two pieces of Ribbon, and some Trinkets for his Wives. The Prince gave him six of his richest Robes, a Collar of Pearl, a *Piroque* or Barge filled with Ammunition and Provision; after which, there was brought a Dozen of Bottles of *Aqua vita*, prepar'd with Sugar and Almonds, and Apricock Kernels. Then the King's Health was drunk, with a discharge of all our Guns, after that of the Prince of the *Tacuca's* in like manner; after which he went again into his *Piroque*, and went away very well satisfied.

We continued all that Day on that Shore,

Shore
and
Degre
being
went

M.
roque,
see w
ders t
as I w
above
ed on
ready
with
me sto
his Co
and sto
our M
posture
made t
and I
go and
ing con
the Col
it very
and ga
they w
M. de

Shore, where we took the Altitude, and found our selves at the 25th Degree of Latitude, the next day being the 22d of *March* 1693, we went and lay ten Leagues off.

M. de la Salle perceiving a *Pirogue*, that made up towards us, to see what we were, gave me orders to chase it ; which I did ; but as I was just going to lay hold of her, above a Hundred Men straight appeared on the Shore, with their Bows ready to shoot us. M. de la Salle, with loud calling after me, made me stop ; and being come back to his Company again, we went all and stood over against them with our Muskets ready presented. This posture of ours frightened them, and made them lay down their Arms ; and I was immediately ordered to go and carry them the *Calumet*. Being come up to them, I offer'd them the Collar of Peace ; they accepted it very civilly ; they embraced me, and gave me to understand, that they would be Friends with us. M. de la Salle seeing in what an obliging

H

liging

Day on that
Shore,

liging manner they had received me, came to join us on the same Shore; and as soon as those Savages perceived him to be our Chief, they paid him all kind of Honours and Respect. He told them that he did not require any thing from them, but a chearful Acknowledgment and Submission to our great King's Orders; to which he added, for their encouragement, the Example of the other greater Nations, and made use of the Arguments he before used on like occasions. They answer'd him, that they had their Prince, and that they could determine nothing without his Orders, and offer'd either to bring him to us, or to conduct us to his Dwelling. *M. de la Salle*, who was always glad of an Opportunity of seeing the Situation, Manners, and Faculty of those Nations, chose the latter. Their Village was four great Leagues off from the Shore. We were no sooner come into it, but the Prince came to receive us; he had us into his Cottage, where he treated us very hand-

hand
the
Peop
ces;
Thei
Twer
great
thery
about

The
of tha
bottor
these p
most p
you m
open t
of He
the fir
the Sh
white
Shell.
in tim
as we
that th
from t
fairer t
on the

handsomly, it was the Prince of the Nation of the *Naches*. This People is divided into two Provinces; this was the least of the two. Their Territories are seldom above Twenty Leagues compass, and their greatest Revenues is the Pearl Fishery which they have in the Sea about them.

There is a great many Divers of that Nation, who dive to the bottom of the Water, and fetch up these precious Shells from the lowermost part of the Rocks. On a fair day you may see the Shells on the Rocks open themselves to receive the Dew of Heaven. Which Dew breeds the first Seeds of the Pearl within the Shells, which appear like little white Grain that sticks fast to the Shell. These small soft Grains do in time become hard and white, as we see they are. It is observed that the Pearls which are fetch'd from the bottom of the Sea, are fairer than those which are found on the Rocks, because the Sun

H 2

tarnishes

tarnishes these, and the Thunder is destructive to their Seeds.

This little Prince presented M. *de la Salle* with some Dozens of 'em, of a considerable bigness; and in return, we gave him a Hatcher, a Kettle, and some Knives. They gave us besides these, some Provisions; and having staid there the whole Day, we went away the next very well satisfied with each other. They gave us a couple of Guides, to shew us the way into the other Nation of the same Name, which is Ten Leagues farther in the Country. In the mean time M. *de la Salle* sent two of our Men to carry some fresh Provisions to those that waited for us by the Water side, together with Orders to fall Ten Leagues lower down the River, and to stay for him there.

Thus we went under the Conduct of our Guides, and came that Night to the great Village of *Nashes*. This Nation is able to set out

out
time
well
Corn
live-t
vast
vast
Fishing
Emple

The
great
many
Provisi
nerouss
ed their
a Volle
took ou
assured
and we
with ne

Being
we went
Leagues
Coroas,
us as th
Homage.

M. De La Salle.

101

out Three Thousand Men in any time of War. Their Land is very well Cultivated, and bears *Indian* Corn, all sorts of Fruit-Trees, *C.* live-trees, and Vines. There are vast Meadows to be seen there; vast Forests and all sorts of Cattle; Fishing and Hunting being all their Employment and their Wealth.

The Prince received us with a great deal of Joy; made us a great many Presents both of Pearl and Provisions, and treated us very generously. The next day we planted there the King's Arms, giving a Volley of Shot; after which we took our leaves of the Prince, who assured us of his intire Submission; and we went to meet our Men with new Provisions.

Being got aboard our Canoes, we went forward, and about Eight Leagues off, we came to the Village *Coroas*, where the Prince receiv'd us as the rest had done, and paid Homage.

The next day being the 27th of March, 1683. we planted our Huts at the Mouth of a great River, which comes from the *West*, and is called *La Sablonniere*; Ten Leagues from hence, as we continued our Course, we found the River divide it self into three Channels; I took the Right-hand-stream, M. de la Forest took the left, and M. de la Salle the middle way; we follow'd each our Course for about Ten Leagues, and in a little time after, we found our selves re-join'd by the uniting of the Three Streams again into one. We were hardly got together again, and gone forward Five or Six Leagues, but we espied some Fisher-men by the Water-side, who were *Quinipissa's*. As soon as they saw us come near, they alarmed all the rest of their Men, and straight the Drum fell a beating, and the Shore was in an instant lined with Savages, all armed with Bows and Arrows; we were willing to send Four *French* Men to treat with 'em, but they were

were
of Ar
Savag
they c
in like
M. de
ny fur
leave
our sel

Two
nipissa's
the V
found
great F
on and
mighty
ing tha
there,
Ten
gun to
the Sho
extende
Shells o
some li
Snails
and all
ty of C
and aft

le.

the 27th of
ed our Huts
reat River,
West, and is
Ten Leagues
ntinued our
River di-
Channels; I
eam, M. de
and M. de
; we fol-
for about
little time
ves re-join'd
ree Streams
vere hardly
gone for-
ues, but we
by the Wa-
nipissa's. As
come near,
est of their
Drum fell a
was in an
avages, all
d Arrows;
Four *French*
n, but they
were

were severely sent back by a shole
of Arows; after which, four of our
Savages offer'd to go to see what
they could do, but they were used
in like manner; in so much that
M. de la Salle, not willing to run a-
ny further risque here, he bid us
leave them in quiet, and trouble
our selves no further with them.

Twelve Leagues from the *Qui-
nipissa's*, we fell to the Right, on
the Village call'd *Tangibao*; we
found it pillag'd, sack'd, and a
great Heap of dead Bodies one up-
on another. This sight struck a
mighty horror in us, and conclud-
ing that it was not good staying
there, we went on; and about
Ten Leagues further, we be-
gun to find the Water brackish;
the Shore seem'd somewhat more
extended, and all strewed with
Shells of different shape and figure,
some like drinking Cups, some like
Snails ending in a spiral point,
and all of a most agreeable varie-
ty of Colours. We kept on still,
and after an Hours sailing, we put
H 4. our

our selves into a Canoo, and kept along the Coast, the better to take our Observation of the Shore, and so came back to land at the River's Mouth.

This was on the Seventh of April, 1683. The first thing we then took care to do, was to return our humble thanks to Almighty God, for our good Success, and for that he had carried us in safety to the end of our Voyage, after more than Eight Hundred Leagues, sailing and rowing with so small a handful of Men, and so little Ammunition; and that through so many barbarous Nations, which we had not only discover'd, but in some measure made subject to us. We Sung the *Te Deum*; after which, taking our Canoos, and our Equipage upon Sledges, we went and planted our Huts a little above the Shore, to be out of the reach of the Sea, which wholly overflows it. after six Hours Ebb, during which it's left quite dry.

Having

Having pitched here our New Camp, we fastned a Cross to the top of a large Tree, and set up the Arms of *France*: After which we raised three or four Huts more, and Entrenched our selves there. Then M. de la Salle took the Altitude, to know where the Mouth of the *Mississipi* was. The *Spaniards*, who had attempted to find it out, tho' in vain, had already given it the Name of *Del Rio Ascondido*. According to M. de la Salle's Calculation, it is between the Twenty second and Twenty third Degree of Latitude; that it throws it self into the Gulph of *Mexico*, with a large Channel which is Twenty Leagues wide, and very deep and Navigable.

M. de la Salle would be a little acquainted with its Shores, before he would leave them. It is certain that they are not fit to be inhabited, by reason of the frequent Inundations by the Spring-Tides, and

Having

and the Barrenness of the Shore : here is nothing but Canes and Reeds, and Woods overthrown. But about a League and a half within the Country, it is the most pleasant in the World, fine large Meadows, fair Woods full of Mulberry-trees, Nut-trees, and Chesnut-trees. The Fields are covered with all sorts of Fruit-Trees, as Orange, Lemmon, Pomegranate, and the sides of the Hills with Vines, and the Fields bear *Indian* Corn twice a Year. We saw in all their Ponds and Rivers vast quantities of Water-Fowl, Geese, Ducks, and Teal, Moor-hens, &c. and in the Woods and Fields, Partridges, Pheasants, Quails, and other kind of Fowl ; of four Footed Creatures all sorts, especially one large sort of Oxen, which they call *Cibola's* ; these are much larger than any hath been mention'd, and are raised like a Cammel from the Chine to the middle of the Back ; they feed among the Canes, and go together sometimes no less in number than Fifteen Hundred.

They

alle.

Shore : there
d Reeds, and
But about a
within the
t pleasant in
e Meadows,
ulberry-trees,
t-trees. The
all sorts of
e, Lemmon,
fides of the
the Fields
ce a Year.
onds and Ri-
Water-Fowl,
Moor-hens,
and Fields,
Quails, and
f four Foot-
especially
which they
e much larg-
n mention'd,
ammel from
ddle of the
g the Canes,
imes no less
n Hundred.
They

M. De La Salle.

107

They Hunt them after a par-
ticular manner. When they are in
the midst of these Canes, where
there is no coming at them, the
savages get round about them, and
set fire to 'em in several places, es-
pecially when the Wind is some-
thing high, which makes at first
a mighty smoke, which turns all
at a sudden into a Flame, and this
strikes so great a terrour into the
Herd, that they all disperse them-
selves, and the Savages, who lie in
wait upon Trees, shoot some with
Arrows, some with Bullets, and
make an incredible Slaughter among
them. By good Fortune, the Sa-
vages *Tangibao*, *Quinipissas*, and *Na-
thes*, had been a Hunting when we
were there (for they always join
when they Hunt them) and they
left us three fine large ones, which
we seiz'd, and having dress'd them,
they feasted us all for three Days,
and we had some left the day we
went away from thence.

M.

M. de la Salle, having a mind to go and give an Account of his Discoveries to Count Frontenac, and to confirm the Nations he had gone through in the good esteem of us, resolved to go up the same River back again to the *Illinois*, and thence for the Lakes, in order to get to *Quebeck*, and from thence set Sail for *France*, and give the Court a true account of his Success.

The Eleventh of *April* of the same Year 1683, we got in a Canoe on the said River; we were about Sixty of us. As this River divides it self into three Channels, about Fifty Leagues from the Sea, we came the first day to the place where they met together, and in Six days after that, to the Point where it divides it self: There our Victuals failing, it was highly necessary to look about us. The first Relief we met with, were some Crocodils; we kill'd two of 'em

in a little while that were pretty
 large: The flesh of them is good,
 white, firm, and very well tasted.
 it is as firm as Tunny, and near
 as he had gone in taste to Salmon, and we feasted
 esteem of us on it for some days. The Stream
 of our River began now to grow
 stronger against us, so that we
 were forced to get on Shore, and
 take our Sledges, as far as *Quini-*
ssa's. As this People had given
 us a scurvey welcome as we came
 down, we were forced to consult
 how we should do to make them
 a little more tractable, wherefore
 we sent two *Abenaguis*, and two
Coups towards them. They met
 with four Women only, which they
 brought to us that Night. This
 prize pleased us very well, hoping
 that by their means, we should
 best compass our Designs. We used
 those Women with all the Civility
 and Prudence imaginable; and
 being come near to their Village,
 the next morning we sent one of
 them home with some small Pre-
 sents, to shew that we did not
 come

come in an Hostile manner, on wanted their Friendship, and what was chiefly necessary, some Recruits of our Provisions. She shewed them all the little Gewgaws we had given her, and related to them what good Entertainment she had received from us, and what Designs were come upon. Immediately they sent four of the Chief of their Nation to us, who brought along with them some Provisions, and invited us to come and be merry with them. We then restored the Three Women into their Hands, and we came nearer to them, but still standing upon our Guard. When we were come into their Village, they presented us some of their Fruits, and some Water-Fowl pretty well dressed. After this Refreshment, we retired about a Hundred Paces from them and lodged in our Huts that Night, between the Village and the River. By break of Day these treacherous Rogues surrounded, and attacked us: But they mist of their aim; for we had set Sentinels all that Night

and were killed blow, and w and h more, and w to serv

From the N dian C and w good c straight Salle, a pass'd, Scalps brought greatest the mo shew to be f

The give o fetch'd and

alle.

M. De La Salle.

III

manner, on
hip, and wh
some Recrui
e shewed the
we had give
em what goo
had receive
Designs w
ately they fe
their Nation
g with the
invited us
with them
Three Wo
and we can
still standi
hen we we
ge, they pr
ir Fruits, an
y well dress
, we retire
s from them
that Night, be
the River. B
herous Rogue
ked us: Bu
aim; fo
ll that Night
an

and with their first Approach, we were prepared to receive them. We killed five or six the very first blow, upon which the rest fled; and we pursued them a little way, and having killed three or four more, we thought that was enough, and we took their Scalps with us to serve for a Trophy.

From thence we went forward to the *Naches*; we had hid some *Indian* Corn there, as we went down, and we found it again in very good condition. The Prince came straightway to receive us; M. de la Salle, after the first Compliments pass'd, presented him with the Scalps of the *Quinipissa's* we had brought with us, who were his greatest Enemies. Which made it the more grateful, and served to shew him that we were not Men to be fool'd with.

The first thing he did, was to give order for something to be fetch'd to refresh us; which we freely

freely accepted of. All this while we observed that we saw no Women in the Village, which made us suspect some Roguery. Notwithstanding we kept eating and drinking, and never seem'd to take any notice of any thing, but we kept our Arms all the while. A little while after we spied a great number of Men in Arms drawing towards us, and we in an instant put our selves in a posture of defence. But the Prince bid us fear nothing, and assured us that we never needed to entertain any suspicion of them; he went up to 'em and commanded them to halt. After which, he told us, that it was a Party of his Men who had been against the *Iroquois*, but that they for their own part were resolved ever to maintain a firm Friendship with us. His words he confirmed by some Presents that followed, as also some Provisions, which we heartily and thankfully received, leaving them, by way of reward, some of our Canoos, which indeed

were

were
that
but
our
ca
Af
Course
Akance
hand
Thu
differ
al of
the tre
due m
rity, a
not o
and a
brough
them
On
we lef
forwar
ver of
went c
to the
M. de
Father
a good
was co
ty of

le. this while
 saw no Wo-
 which made
 ery. Not-
 eating and
 m'd to take
 g, but we
 while. A

ied a great
 ms drawing
 an instant
 ture of de-
 bid us fear
 s that we
 ain any sus-
 t up to 'em
 o halt. Af-
 that it was

o had been
 ut that they
 re resolved
 Friendship
 e confirmed
 ollowed, as
 which we
 y received,
 of reser-
 hich indeed
 were

were but cumbersome to us; and that we came off safe and sound, but we attributed our safety to our care and watchfulness.

After this, we continued our Course toward the *Tacuca's*, and the *Akancéa's*, who received us very handsomely at our Landing.

Thus, passing through so many different Nations, we made trial of the faithfulness of some, and the treachery of others; and by a due mixture of mildness and severity, and a constant care, we did not only frustrate their Designs, and avoid their Ambush, but we brought them to Terms, and made them submit to us.

On the Twelfth of May, 1683, we left the *Akancéa's*, and pushed forward to the Mouth of the River of the *Illinois*; after which we went on along the Shore, quite up to the Fort *Preudhomme*, where M. de la Salle fell dangerously ill. Father *Gabriel* staid with him, with a good many of his Men; and I was commanded to go with Twenty of his Men to *Missilamachinac*,

I

to

to look after his Affairs. I left him there the Fifteenth of *May*.

I went the first Day to lie at *Ouabaches*; where I was made very welcome.

Twenty Leagues further, I met with some *Iroquois*. These Savages, who are the most barbarous of all others, are sneakingly submissive when their Party is the weakest, but most unmerciful when they have an advantage. There was but Five of them that met us; and they told us we should not go far e're we should meet a Company of above Four Hundred Men well Armed. This Advice made us take care to stand upon our Guard, for truly it is not very safe to fall into the Hands of these Barbarous People when they march in a Body. We had not gone a quarter of a League, but we spied a little Army, which we took at first to be *Iroquois*, but they were *Tavaroa's* who had joined themselves with some *Illinois*. They seeing our Fire-Arms, took us for *Iroquois*, and were going to surround us, with a Design to burn us, for that

le. I left
 of *May*.
 ay to lie at
 s made very
 ther, I met
 These Sava-
 ft barbarous
 kingly sub-
 Party is the
 merciful when
 ge. There
 m that met
 we should
 ould meet a
 ur Hundred
 his Advice
 stand upon
 is not very
 nds of these
 they march
 not gone a
 t we spied
 we took at
 they were
 themselves
 y seeing our
 or *Iroquois*,
 rround us,
 us, for that
 is

is the usual way of dealing with those barbarous Fellows, whensoever they get any of them; so great is the abhorrence which all Nations have against them. But the *Illinois* having discover'd who we were, they unbent their Bows, and gave us part of their Provisions. We pursued our Road to the River *Chicacou*, and after Twenty Days Journey, we at length arrived at *Missilimachinac*, in the beginning of *July*; where we staid for M. de la Salle, who came and joined us in *September* the same Year. He stayed there but three Days, to give some necessary Orders. He gave me the command of Fort *St. Louis*, with orders to see it finished, and a full power to dispose of the Lands adjacent, and left all his Men under me, except six *French* Men he took with him to *Quebeck*. We went away the same Day, he for *Canada*, I for the *Illinois*.

I went directly to *Miamis*, at the head of Forty Men, *French* and Savages. I came to it on the 6th

of *January*, 1684, and visited the Fort, which was in a very good condition. There I left Ten of my Men well Armed, and pursuing my Journey, I got, by the end of the Month, to Fort *St. Louis*. I set Men at work about it immediately, and in less than two Months time I compleated it. Presently after this, I invited all the Neighbouring Nations to come to it.

There needed no great pains or Art to get them thither. The beauty of the Country, the fruitfulness of the Land, the convenience of a fine Navigable River; the nearness of about a Hundred different Nations, and of those little Lakes, or rather little Seas, which make it a fit Seat of Commerce for all *North America*; and reach from the River *St. Laurent* to the Gulf of *Mexico*. In short, the advantageous Scituation of this Fort, which was design'd as a Bulwark for all the Nations that should come to settle there, against all irruptions of the barbarous Nations, was a sufficient Invitation and Inducement

men
ther
ther
Hut
two
ful
Nati
seen,
Sava
lished
some
how
as it
civil
barou
In
being
satisfa
la Cor
been
Order
thithe
not fa
with
and v
Nation
to the
um wa
ment

lle.
 visited the
 very good
 ft Ten of
 and pursu-
 by the end
 St. Louis.
 ut it imme-
 two Months
 resently af-
 the Neigh-
 e to it.
 at pains or
 her. The
 the fruit-
 convenien-
 River; the
 ndred diffe-
 those little
 eas, which
 Commerce
 and reach
 rent to the
 t, the ad-
 this Fort,
 Bulwark for
 ould come
 all irrupti-
 ons, was
 nd Induce-
 ment

ment to them to come and dwell
 there. So that in a little time,
 there was above Five Hundred
 Huts made up, and in less than
 two Months, there was a wonder-
 ful great concourse of People of all
 Nations. By this it is easie to be
 seen, with how little difficulty the
 Savages might be tamed and po-
 lished, by planting here and there
 some Colonies of *Europeans*. For
 how few soever they be, they are,
 as it were a ciment of Concord and
 civil Society amongst the most bar-
 barous Nations.

In the mean while M. de la Salle
 being arriv'd at *Quebec*, had the dis-
 satisfaction not to meet with M.
la Comte de Frontenac; for he had
 been re-manded to *France* by an
 Order from Court, and was gone
 thither. After his Arrival, he did
 not fail to acquaint all the City
 with the Discoveries he had made,
 and with the News of so many
 Nations yielding themselves subject
 to the King's Power. The *Te De-*
um was sung, as an acknowledg-
 ment of this happy Addition of
 I 3 glory

glory and Honour to the Crown. The earnest desire which M. de la Salle had, to go to give the King and his Ministers an Account of the success of his Travels, made him hasten his Departure. He went from *Canada* in the beginning of *October*, 1684. But before he set Sail, he sent the Chevalier de *Bogia* to me, as a Person that had been highly recommended to him. He came to me to *St. Louis's Fort*. I received him as well as I could, and gave him the best Entertainment that my Condition would permit me.

On the Twentieth of *March*, in the same Year; having received Advice, that the *Iroquois*, being jealous of our new Establishment, were coming against us with considerable Forces; I sent an Express to M. de la *Durontai*, Governour of the Fort *Missilimachinac*, for some assistance. In the mean while I raised new Fortifications, and by means of good Ditches, Rampires, and other Works, I put the Village into a good posture of Defence.

fence.
of Ma
numb
them
first
Week
forced
of Fo
one c
Slaves
they r
of, an
come
were
Scalps,
happily
and ca
Abo
la Dur
Jesuit,
assist
In the
was c
the C
Chang
New
look'd
their P
severe,

the Crown.
 M. de la
 the King
 Account of
 vels, made
 He went
 beginning of
 ore he set
 er de Bogia
 t had been
 him. He
 s's Fort. I
 s I could,
 Entertain-
 would per-

March, in
 ceived Ad-
 being jea-
 ablishment,
 with con-
 an Express
 overnour of
 for some
 n while I
 s, and by
 Rampires,
 the Vil-
 re of De-
 fence.

fence. They came on the 28th of *March*, and lay before us, to the number of Five Hundred; we beat them back bravely in their very first Attacks; at last, after Six Weeks, we raised the Siege, and forced them to retire with the loss of Fourscore of theirs, and not of one of ours. They took a few Slaves in the Neighbourhood, that they might have something to Brag of, and might not be thought to come back empty; but as they were just a going to flea their Scalps, the poor Wretches were happily so cunning as to get away, and came to us in our Fort.

About the 15th of *April*, M. de la *Dumontai*, and Father de *Loy* a Jesuit, with Sixty *French* came to assist me, but it was needless then. In the mean while M. de la *Barre* was come to *Quebeck*, to succeed the Count de *Frontenac*. This Change was a dreadful blow to New *France* in general, which look'd upon Count de *Frontenac* as their Patron. But it proved no less severe, in respect to my own particular.

ricular. For no sooner was this new Governour come over, who was a Friend and Relation of the Chevalier *de Bogia*, but he gave him the command of *St. Louis's* Fort; the rise and perfection of which were all owing to me. He directed his Orders to *M. de la Durantai*, to deliver to me; who informed me with the new Governour's Orders, to give up my Command of the place, and to invest the Chevalier therewith. I could do no other but obey the Orders. I left some considerable Effects in the Fort, whereof I made an Inventory, which the Chevalier was so kind as to set his Hand to; and I left the place the same day, taking with me what was of most moment and use. I first took the Road of *Montreal*, and thence went to *Quebeck*, where I arriv'd in the beginning of *July*. I could do no less than go and wait on the Governour, and give him a faithful Account of the Condition and Importance of the place, which I had left by his Order, and of the state of the Country in general. He
heard

he he
very
I shou
ed hi
him,
Emple
came
As
to wri
an Ac
how I
being
he hac
really
Dange
under
king th
mitting
to M. d
to supp
mon Pr
the goo
for. I
finest b
came ba
of *July*
to learn
receptio
at Cour

he heard me very courteously, and very civilly offer'd me any other Post I should desire in *America*. I thanked him for his kind Offers, and told him, I was not willing to take any Employment until M. de la Salle came back; and so we parted.

As soon as I arriv'd, I did not fail to write to M. de la Salle, and give him an Account how I was served, and how I thought my self wronged, by being thus put out of the Command he had given me. Adding, that I really thought there might be some Danger of the Peoples sitting uneasie under a new Governour, and forsaking their new Habitations, or committing some Disorder. I writ besides to M. de la Forest, a Friend of mine, to support my Interests with our common Protector. These Letters had all the good effect I could wish or hope for. I received an Answer to my Business by M. de la Forest himself, who came back to *Quebeck* in the latter end of *July* 1684. I had the satisfaction to learn from him what a gracious reception M. de la Salle had met with at Court, and what considerable Forces

ces the King had granted him to settle the Colonies in the New-found-lands; and withal that he was im- bark'd for the Gulf of *Mexico*; but what compleated my joy was, that I triumphed over mine Enemies, by my restitution to St. *Louis's* Fort, in the Quality of Governour, and Cap- tain; for which this Gentleman brought me the Letters which M. de *la Salle* had obtain'd from the King in my favour.

I equipp'd my self straightway with Arms and all Materials necessary, as well for the Fortification of the place, as for the raising of my Company. And after we had spent some days together at *Quebeck* M. de *la Forest* and I, went away together the First of *Novemb*, he for *Frontenac*, of which place he was going Governour, and I for the *Illinois*.

The Ice putting a stop to our Voyage on the River of St. *Laurence*, we were forced to stay and Winter at *Montreal*, until the next Spring, in 1685.

In the beginning of *April*, we got up the River again as far as the Fort

Fron-

le.

him to set-
New-found-
he was im-
Mexico ; but
y was, that
Enemies, by
is's Fort, in
r, and Cap-
Gentleman
which M. de
m the King

straightway
als necessa-
ification of
sing of my
e had spent
uebeck M. de
away toge-
ner, he for
e he was go-
the Illinois.
to our Voy-
aurence, we
Winter at
Spring, in
ril, we got
as the Fort
Fron-

Frontenac, where I took my leave of
M. la Forest. I went in a Canoo on
the first Lake to *Magara*, where af-
ter I had shot the fall of the River, I
got to *Missilimachinac*, and then to
Miamis, and being come to the Mouth
of the River of the *Illinois*, I went to
Fort St. *Louis*, about June 15 in the
same Year.

The Chevalier *de Bogis*, immedi-
ately entertain'd me with all pos-
sible marks of Joy, Friendship, and
Respect ; and I endeavour'd to make
a suitable return to his Kindness ;
but at last, after having inform'd him
of *M. de la Salle's* Embarking, and of
all other News then stirring ; I found
my self oblig'd to shew him the Let-
ters Patents, to be Commander in
Chief, and Governour of Fort St. *Lou-*
is, with which the King thought fit
to honour me. He receiv'd this Or-
der with a great deal of submission,
and put me again in possession of the
place, with all the Effects with which
I had entrusted him, assuring me,
at the same time, that nevertheless
he should still be ready to do me ser-
vice upon all occasions, and always
to

to perform the Office of a faithful Friend. We spent the rest of the day together in amicable Conversation, and the next Morning he departed a third time for the Town of *Quebeck*.

In the mean while the *Miamis* and the *Illinois*, neighbouring Nations and our Allies, being at variance about certain trivial pretensions; I endeavour'd to reconcile them; having receiv'd from both Parties Hostages and Pledges of their Fidelity. In the beginning of *August*, being much disturb'd that I had heard no News of *M. de la Salle*, I pass'd over to *Mississimachinac*, to make some Enquiry after him. There I was inform'd that the *Marquess d'Enonville* succeeded *M. de la Barre*, in quality of Governour of *New France*; and I had also the Honour to receive a Letter from him; in which he was pleas'd to express his desire of entering into a Conference with me, about the Design he had to make War with the *Iroquois*; at the same time he gave me to understand, that *M. de la Salle*, having been for a long time at Sea, had, without doubt, already enter'd the Gulf with four

M. D'Enonville
nominated
in the place
of M. de la
Barre.

tight y: The

le.

of a faithful
est of the day
Conversation.
he departed a
n of *Quebeck*
e *Miamis* and
Nations and
nce about cer-
endeavour'd
ving receiv'd
ostages and
. In the be-
ng much di-
no News of
er to *Mississi-*
Enquiry after
m'd that the
ceeded M. de
Gouverneur of
also the Ho-
from him;
d to express
a Conference
gn he had to
quois; at the
understand,
g been for a
thout doubt,
f with four
tight

M. De La Salle.

125

eight Ships, given him by the King,
and that apparently he must needs
have arriv'd at the Mouth of the Ri-
ver *Mississippi*, or in some other Port.

This Letter serv'd only to increase
the Earnest desire I had to meet him,
insomuch that I immediately took
care to provide what Supplies I could
for him; fitted out Twenty *Canadi-*
ans, and returning to the *Illinois*, with
my new Recruits; I arriv'd within
a Month, at *St. Louis's* Fort: Where,
after having given necessary Orders,
I left the Command of the Place to
the *Sieur de Bellefontaine*; and set for-
ward with Forty Men for the Gulf
of *Mexico*. Thus we pass'd down our
River into the great one of *Mississippi*,
follow'd its Course to the Sea, and
spent about two Months in perform-
ing this Voyage.

Upon our Arrival on the Sea shore,
not meeting with what I sought for,
nor any Person who could give me
any Information about the matter,
I sent out two Boats, viz. one to the
East, and the other to the *South-west*,
to endeavour to make some Discove-
ry: They row'd up and down about

Twen-

Twenty Leagues from one side to another, along the Coast, and having deserv'd nothing, were oblig'd to stand in for some Port for want of Fresh Water, and return'd to join our Fleet, after a Course of two days without being able to get any notice of what I expected. All that I received from them by way of Consolation was only a Porpoise, and some very fine Shells of Mother of Pearl, which they took on a Rock.

Therefore perceiving that it would be to no purpose to wait there any longer, I advis'd with the most prudent Men of our Company, about the Course we ought to steer at our return. I was inclin'd to follow the Coast as far as *Menada*, hoping by that means, continually to discover some new Country, or to take some good Prize: But the most part were of the contrary Opinion; affirming it was safer to keep a known Road, rather than to take one that was not so, and which otherwise could not but be a very difficult passage; as well by reason of the High Lands along the Coast, as for the great number of Rivers that
 unload
 that w
 lution
 we ca
 Befo
 serv'd,
 de la S
 Kings
 to be
 ness of
 up a li
 rected
 upon in
 France.
 same p
 being
 we fet
 velling
 the Riv
 On t
 the Cou
 Comma
 us, and
 begg'd
 us, dur
 ing us
 admit 'e
 lies. F
 submissi
 unload
 ly, and

one side to a
t, and having
e oblig'd to
for want of
urn'd to join
of two days
get any notice
that I receiv
f Consolation
nd some very
f Pearl, which

that it would
it there any
most prudent
y, about the
er at our re
o follow the
oping by the
discover some
ke some good
rt were of the
rming it was
Road, rather
as not so, and
not but be
s well by re
ng the Coast
of Rivers the

unload themselves into the Sea; so that we were oblig'd to take a Resolution to return the same way that we came.

Before our Departure, having observ'd, that the Tree on which M. de la Salle had caus'd a Cross, with the Kings Arms to be set up, was ready to be thrown down by the boistroufness of the Winds and Waves, we got up a little higher, where having Erected a large Pillar, we fixt a Cross upon it, and underneath the Arms of France. We lodg'd that Night in the same place, but the next Morning being *Easter Monday, A. D. 1685.* we set forward on our Journey, travelling by Land along the Banks of the River *Mississipi*.

On the Sixth day, being arriv'd in the Country of the *Qinipissa's*; their Commander in Chief came to meet us, and having offer'd us the *Calumet*, begg'd pardon for their ill usage of us, during our last Voyage; entreating us that we would vouchsafe to admit 'em into the number of our Allies. However we answer'd their submissive Addresses very magisterially, and having refresh'd our selves a little

*The Quini-
pissa's re-
conciled
with the
French.*

Ouma's
Savage
People.

A strange
Beast.

little among 'em, we pursu'd our Journey. Four Leagues above, we discover'd in the Country a certain Nation, that had escap'd from us at our first Descent, I mean that of the *Ouma's*, who are the most valiant of all the Savages; altho' it be true indeed, that as soon as they saw us and our Arms, they were struck with a kind of Astonishment, accompanied with a panick Fear, that quite curb'd their fierceness, and oblig'd them to promise an entire Obedience to our Injunctions: They offer'd us some new Refreshments, and to serve us to the utmost of their power. In those Territories we observ'd an extraordinary rare Animal, that partakes of the nature of a Wolf and a Lion; as having the Head and size of a large Wolf, but the Tail and Claws of a Lion: He devours all sorts of Beasts, yet never sets upon Men: He sometimes carries his Prey on his Back, eats part of it, and hides the rest under the Leaves of Trees; but the other Animals have so great an Antipathy against this Beast, which is call'd *Michibichi*, that they never touch what he leaves.

After

After
Akance
are so
rich'd
that w
'em:
are of a
to be a
Soil b
great v
Fields
sorts o
Hound
huge v
thing t
Men ch
Climate
there;
was to
render
on, I r
quest.
of a Ho
ceas, an
Retinue
on the
License
to cultiv
grub up,
that this

alle.

perfu'd our
s above, we
y a certain
d from us
ean that of
most valiant
o' it be true
they saw us
struck with
accompani-
that quite
and oblig'd
e Obedience
they offer'd
ments, and
most of their
ories we ob-
rare Animal,
re of a Wolf
he Head and
the Tail and
devours all
er sets upon
ries his Prey
it, and hides
es of Trees;
ave so great
Beast, which
they never

After

M. De La Salle.

129

After the *Oumas* we met with the *Akanceas*. Indeed all these Countries are so pleasant, and so extremely enrich'd with the Productions of Nature, that we could not sufficiently admire 'em: The Trees in the Woods, which are of an extraordinary heighth, seem'd to be artificially planted in Rows: The Soil brings forth good Grain, with great variety of Fruit-Trees, and the Fields are every where stor'd with all sorts of Game, both for Hawk and Hound; but there is also abundance of huge wild Cats, which devour every thing that they can find. Our *French* Men charm'd with the Beauty of this Climate, desir'd leave of me to settle there; and forasmuch as our Intention was to civilize the Savages, and to render 'em sociable by our Conversation, I readily consented to their Request. Whereupon I made the Draught of a House for my self among the *Akanceas*, and left Ten *French* Men of my Retinue with Four Savages, to carry on the Building of it; granting 'em a License to lodge there themselves, and to cultivate as much Land as they could grub up, and clear of Trees: Insomuch, that this small Colony was in Process
K of

Akanceas
a Nation.

of Time so extremely increas'd and improv'd, that it serves as a Place of Rendez-vous to the *French*, who travel into those Parts.

From thence I continu'd my Course along the River of the *Isinois*, and after Three Days Journey arriv'd at St. Lewis's Fort, on the Festival of St. John, being less tir'd with the Fatigues of my Travels, than perplexed about the Uncertainty of M. De La Salle's Destiny. Forasmuch as I had not as yet paid my Respects to our new Governor; after having pass'd some Days in refreshing my self, I left the *Isinois* in the end of the Month of June, and arriv'd at Montreal, July 15. Then I went forthwith to salute the Governor, and receiv'd Orders from him to cause the War against the *Iroquois* to be declar'd amongst our Allies, and to summon 'em to appear at St. Lewis's Fort, to carry on such an Expedition.

Having receiv'd this Commission, I soon took leave of Monsieur D'Enonville, and arriv'd in the Country of the *Isinois*, Septemb. 4. from whence I speedily dispatch'd divers Couriers from all Parts, to give notice to the Neighbouring Nations of our Design, and to ex-

War declar'd against the
Iroquois.

hort
of Re
People
Mont
Isinois
whole
400 M
Men
the Po
De Be
encam
of the
the wh
I decla
and th
ing 'em
to exer
the Inf
mon E
" Thi
genera
where
at the
to the
of the
that Pl
Name
to defe
De la
of it, t

hor

increas'd and
as a Place of
, who travel

d my Course
inois, and af-
arriv'd at
Festival of St.
the Fatigues
plexed about
La Salle's De-
ad not as yet
new Gover-
d some Days
t the *Isinoi*s
of June, and
15. Then I
the Gover-
from him to

e *Iroquois* to
llies, and to
t St. Lewis's
Expedition.
ommission, I
eur D'Enon-
country of the
hence I spee-
riers from all
e Neighbour-
n, and to ex-
hor-

hort 'em to appear betimes at the place
of *Rendez-vous*. Whereupon all the
People met together in the end of the
Month of *March*, A. D. 1686. as well
Isinois, as *Chianons* and *Niamis*. The
whole Multitude consisted of about
400 Men; to whom I joyn'd 60 *French*
Men of my Company, leaving 40 in
the Fort under the Command of M.
De Bellefontaine. This small Army
encamp'd within a quarter of a League
of the Village; where having caused
the whole Body to stand to their Arms,
I declar'd to 'em the King's Pleasure,
and the Governour's Orders; exhort-
ing 'em to signalize their Valour, and
to exert their utmost Force, to repress
the Insolence of the *Iroquois*, our com-
mon Enemies.

This Speech was follow'd with the
general Acclamations of all the People;
whereupon I immediately put my self
at the Head of 'em, and began to march
to the Canal that joyns the two Lakes
of the *Suvrons* and the *Isinois*. In
that Place stands a Fort that bears the
Name of St. *Joseph*, and which serves
to defend those small Seas. *Monsieur*
De la Durontay was the Commander
of it, to whom I sent one of our *French*-

St. Joseph's
Fort.

Men to give him notice of our Arrival. Upon which Information he immediately commanded his Lieutenant to meet me with 30 Men, and the next day he himself led up the like number. Then we encamped on the Banks of that Streight, and Provisions were brought to us thither from all Parts. Two Days after *M. de la Foret*, Governor of the Fort of *Frontenac*, and *M. de Lude*, Commander of that of the *Miamis*, each at the Head of his Company march'd to joyn our Army. All the Forces being thus assembled, we held a Council of War, to consult what Measures ought to be taken, and it was determin'd, to divide the Army into two Bodies, one of which should be commanded by the *Sieurs de la Durontay*, and *de Lude*, to secure the Avenues of *Missilimachinac*, and to defend the Coasts of the Lake *Heriè*, as far as *Niagara*; where we design'd to erect a Fort, which was already begun to be built, to curb the *Iroquois*, who always made some Opposition on that side: And that *M. de la Foret* and my self should be Commanders of the other Body, to invade the Enemies Country.

The

The
thus c
march
machin
Party
bove 5
quois, C
way, t
tain a
gag'd
and att
above h
spot; f
the rest
On o
Leagues
to mee
English,
under t
were co
Brandy,
Mercha
the Iroqu
after ha
the Iroqu
we seiz'd
chandize
Slaves,
English
small Vi

The management of Affairs being thus dispos'd of, *M. de la Dumont* march'd along the Coasts of *Missilimachinac*, and met with a considerable Party of the Enemies, compos'd of above 500 Men, as well *English* as *Iroquois*, (here it may be observ'd by the way, that those two Nations maintain a strict mutual Amity, when engag'd together against the *French*) and attack'd 'em so vigorously, that above half of 'em were kill'd on the spot; some Prisoners were taken; and the rest were put to flight.

The English and Iroquois are united to make War with the French.

On our side, at the distance of 20 Leagues from *Niagara*, we found Means to meet with a numerous Party of *English*, *Iroquois*, and *Onabaches*, who under the Conduct of Major *Gregory*, were conveying a great quantity of Brandy, Provisions, Ammunition, and Merchandizes, to the Inhabitants of the *Iroquois*. We fell upon 'em; and after having kill'd the greatest part of the *Iroquois*, and of the other Savages, we seiz'd on their Baggages and Merchandizes, took a great number of Slaves, and carry'd away above 25 *English* Men Prisoners. After this small Victory we continued our March

The

to *Niagara*, where we compleated the Building of the Fort in sight of the *Iroquois*, and even at the very Foot of their Habitations.

The prosperous Success of our Arms in the beginning oblig'd us to send a Messenger to the Governour, to give him an Account of every thing that had pass'd, and *M. de la Foret*, who was very desirous to accept of this Commillion, set forward with all possible speed. *M. D'Enonville* receiv'd the Information with a great deal of Satisfaction; caus'd it to be communicated to the whole Continent of *Canada*; and sent us fresh Supplies of *Hurons*, *Plomontears* and *Ouatona's*; who came to meet us at the Rise of the Cataract, with a Bark very well mann'd.

Thus being re-forc'd with these new Recruits, I march'd further into the Territories of the Enemies; but we entertain'd in our Camp a certain *Iroquois*, who feigning to be disgusted at the Proceedings of his own Nation, seem'd to be extremely well affected to ours; nevertheless this treacherous Renegado took an Opportunity to abandon us to return to the *Enemies Army*, and gave 'em notice of our March, as also of the

Marks

Marks
be cert
were c
we arr
rals, at
from th
some o
ing ou
our M
Sub-Li
rally'd,
after h
their P
but no
'em, a
vance
into an
our sel
where
every
way.

We
Place,
mand
rontay
day af
a mon
to for
being
Spies,

pleated the sight of the very Foot of our Arms to send a our, to give ing that had ho was very Commilli- possible speed. e Informati- Satisfaction; ated to the la; and sent Plonontears to meet us act, with a with these further into ies; but we certain Iro- disgusted at wn Nation, affected to cherous Re- to abandon my, and gave also of the Marks

Marks of our Savages, so as they might be certainly discover'd. Thus as we were continually advancing forward, we arriv'd on the other side of a Morass, at the distance of Three Leagues from the Camp of the *Iroquois*; where some of 'em lay in Ambush, expecting our Approach, and kill'd Seven of our Men, among whom was my Sub-Lieutenant: However we soon rally'd, repuls'd 'em vigorously, and after having cut off above Thirty of their Party, pursu'd 'em to the Woods; but not being able to come up with 'em, and not judging it safe to advance any further, lest we should fall into another Ambuscade, we contented our selves to plunder their Villages, where we put to the Edge of the Sword every one whom we met in our way.

We encamped for some Days in that Place, and the Army under the Command of *M. de Lude* and *M. de la Durontay* came to joyn ours. The next day after their Arrival we did not stay a moment, e're we took a Resolution to force the Enemies Camp; who being inform'd of our Design, by their Spies, did not think fit to wait for our

Approach, but decamp'd with great Precipitation. We found in their Camp some Remainders of *Indian* Corn, and other Provisions, which we made use of to our Advantage, and we spent the Night in their Tents, or rather Huts; the Season being already very far advanc'd. The next Morning we sent back all our Allies to their several Territories, with Orders to meet together again upon the first Summons; while the *Sieurs de la Lude* and *de la Dumontay* repair'd to their Respective Stations.

As I was marching to mine, I met with certain *Hurons*, who gave me to understand, that I was ready to be surrounded with the whole Army of the *Iroquois*. There was no longer any Means to have recourse to *M. de Lude*, and *de la Dumontay*, who were already embark'd in Canoes on the Lakes; insomuch, that I was oblig'd to cause my small Band of Men to halt, and instantly to dispatch a Courier to *Niagara* to demand speedy Succours of the Commander of the new Fort. It happen'd accidentally, that *M. de la Valromè*, the Governour of it, supposing us to be engag'd with the *Iroquois*, was leading up Fifty Fusileers to our Relief, and

lle.

d with great
nd in their
f *Indian* Corn,
ich we made
and we spent
s, or rather
ready very far
rning we sent
r several Ter-
neet together
mons; while
de la Durentay
Stations.
mine, I met
gave me to
dy to be sur-
Army of the
longer any
M. de Lude,
ere already
the Lakes;
g'd to cause
halt, and
rier to Nia-
cours of the
rt. It hap-
M. de la Val-
supposing
roquois, was
our Relief,
and

M. De La Salle.

137

and in the mean while the Messenger
whom I sent, having met with him,
inform'd him of our present Distress,
which caus'd him to hasten his March:
His Arrival inspir'd us with new Cou-
rage, so that the Enemies appearing,
we set our small Army in Battel-array;
yet when we had advanced towards
em within Musket-shot, they had
not the Courage to stay for our com-
ing up, but suddenly turn'd their Backs
upon us: Whereupon we pursued 'em
for some time, till about 100 of them
perish'd on the spot, and the rest found
Means to escape into the Woods. Then
immediately caus'd a Retreat to be
ounded; and having convoy'd M. de
Salromè on part of his way, I judg'd
expedient to take up our Winter-
quarters at *Missilimachinac*, and to re-
de there till the next Campaign, in
ase the War should continue.

The Scene of Affairs began now to be
hang'd; for the *Iroquois* resign'd to us <sup>The Iro-
quois</sup>
their Habitations that were near *Niaga-* ^{forc'd to}
submit.
; made a Present of their best Skins
to the Governour; and engag'd that for
the future they should not disturb the
tranquillity of the Nations that were
nder our Protection, and who were
our

our Allies. A Treaty of Peace being thus concluded, I set forward in my Journey to the Country of the *Illinois* in the Month of *April*, 1687. and should have been very well satisfied with the Success of the Campaign, if I had not been continually troubled, by reason of M. De la Salle's long Absence, not knowing what might have befallen him. For he set out from *America*, A.D. 1683, and we did so in 1687. so that Four Years were almost past, without having any other News of him, than that of his re-embarking, or his Departure from *Rochel* for the Gulph of *Mexico*, but without getting the least Information concerning his Return. Indeed I knew not what to think. Did he not perish (said I to my self) by Shipwreck, or rather did he not land on some Coast, inhabited by Barbarians, who perhaps might have dispatch'd him out of the way? Thus being perplex'd with such distracting Thoughts, I could take no Rest, neither could I Steer any certain Course, but suffering my self to be conducted by my Attendants, rather than leading 'em my self, I arriv'd at *St. Lewis's* Fort in the end of the Month of *May*.

As I was ex-
with M
Brother
in his C
ly Air, v
Meeting
interval o
Transpo
me to n
inently
same ti
Brother
he appe
stand;
men, a d
which h
self, we
omens;
conceal
had rec
me very
his Bro
but tha
tion ha
that he
nue his
small V
trading
whom

Peace being
ward in my
the *Illinois* in
and should
fied with the
if I had not
l, by reason
Absence, not
befallen him
ca, A.D. 1683
so that Four
ithout having
than that of
eparture from
Mexico, but
Information
ndeed I knew
he not peris
pireck, or re
se Coast, in
perhaps mig
he way? Th
ch distractin
no Rest, ne
ertain Court
conducted b
than leadin
St. Lewis's Fo
of May.

As soon as I enter'd my House, I was extremely surpriz'd, there to meet with *M. Cavelier*, *M. De La Salle's* own Brother, and indeed, I did not discern in his Countenance that free and sprightly Air, which usually appears at the first Meeting of two Friends, after a long Interval of Separation : However, the first Transports of my Joy, not permitting me to make long Reflections, I incontinently embrac'd him, and at the same time enquir'd of him about his Brother's Welfare. Upon this Address, he appear'd to be altogether put to a stand ; so that a sad Look up to Heaven, a deep Sigh, and a certain Effort, which he seem'd to make within himself, were taken by me as so many ill Omens ; I earnestly entreated him to conceal nothing from me, and after he had recover'd himself a little, he told me very positively, ' That *M. de la Salle* his Brother was in perfect Health ; but that the ill Success of his Navigation had so far pull'd down his Spirits, that he had scarce Courage to continue his Course ; that in returning by small Voyages, he took delight in trading with the different Nations, whom he met with ; and that ha-

' ving

‘ving charg’d him to go before, to
 ‘give me notice of his Arrival, he de-
 ‘termin’d still to reside among the Na-
 ‘ches and *Akanceas* for some time, to
 ‘purchase certain Merchandizes of both
 ‘those Nations.

The Assurance, with which he
 spoke to me, joyn’d with a Shew of
 downright Integrity, which was na-
 tural to him, besides the Deference due
 to a Person of his Character; for he
 was a Priest, would not suffer me in
 the least to call in Question the vera-
 city of his Relation, and serv’d a lit-
 tle to encourage me against my sad
 Presages. Therefore I entreated him
 to give me an Account of his Voyage,
 and to let me know when they re-em-
 bark’d, and at what time they landed.
 Since then I gave him a great deal of
 Scope, to deliver his Mind ingenuously,
 and without Constraint, he began to
 relate the particular Circumstances
 with so much the more Freedom.

He told me at first, ‘That the whole
 ‘Court of *France*, being charm’d with
 ‘the great Discoveries made by *M. de*
 ‘*la Salle*, the King made no scruple at
 ‘all to grant him the Supplies he de-
 ‘sir’d; not to mention the Titles of

‘Ho-

le.
 go before, to
 rival, he de-
 among the Na-
 some time, to
 dizes of both

which he
 in a Shew of
 ich was na-
 Deference due
 ter; for he
 suffer me in
 on the vera-
 serv'd a lit-
 inst my sad
 treated him
 his Voyage,
 they re-em-
 they landed.
 great deal of
 ingenuously,
 ne began to
 circumstances
 edom.

at the whole
 arm'd with
 de by M. de
 no scruple at
 plies he de-
 ne Titles of
 'Ho-

Honour, that procur'd him greater
 Authority in his new Plantations:
 That they set out from *France*, *July*
 24. *A. D.* 1684. with four Vessels,
 very well provided of all things ne-
 cessary, and above 200 Men, as well
 Soldiers as Artificers of all sorts of
 Trades, and that nevertheless by a
 Complication of Misfortunes, their
 whole Fleet was reduc'd to a few
 Boats, and that great number of Per-
 sons, to Seven or Eight *French* Men,
 who serv'd as a Convoy to his Bro-
 ther during his Return.

Forasmuch as these Remarkable
 Crosses afforded Matter of Wonder, I
 could not choose but be very desirous
 to be inform'd of all the Particulars
 of their Adventures: Whereupon M.
avelier resuming his former Narra-
 tive from the beginning of their Navi-
 gation, told me, ' That after a Calm
 which continued for some Days, in
 the Latitude of *St. Domingo*, they
 were suddenly surpriz'd with a vio-
 lent Storm; insomuch, that one of
 their Ships, laden with Merchandizes,
 to the value of above Thirty Thousand
Livres, was hurry'd away with a
 furious Blast of Wind, and afterwards
 ' taken

† *Pirogues*. ' taken by certain *Spanish* † *Rovers* ' de la
 ' That the rest of the Fleet cast Anchor ' de gre
 ' before the same Island, where the ' the I
 ' were soon refitted, and supply'd with ' to avi
 ' fresh Provisions, which with the Me ' great
 ' chandizes there bought, serv'd for the ' land
 ' Cargo of these Vessels, but that the ' Leagu
 ' greatest part of the Mariners, by ' for:
 ' ving somewhat too licentiouslly, co ' discov
 ' tracted very dangerous Diseases. ' Ships
 ' That they cruis'd about from then ' to ste
 ' towards the Islands of *Caimant*, an ' Rocks
 ' took in fresh Water on that of *Cuba* ' riv'd
 ' where, having found many Tuns ' afterw
 ' Canary, good Brandy, Sugar, an ' St. Len
 ' *Indian* Corn left unguarded, the ' venier
 ' seiz'd on the whole Cargo, and g ' tis da
 ' such Reprisals as were sufficient ' by re
 ' make 'em amends for the loss of ever ' encom
 ' thing that the *Spaniards* had take ' which
 ' from them before: That afterwar ' Ind
 ' being supply'd with all manner ' of the
 ' Provisions, they set Sail again; an ' Have b
 ' that having always had a favourab ' for afte
 ' Gale of Wind, they would have e ' Mouth
 ' ter'd the Gulph of *Mexico*; but the ' to desc
 ' perceiving the Currents to be ve ' wards
 ' rapid, and the Shelves to be num ' to forr
 ' rous, they were oblig'd to stand ' vent M
 ' from the Shoar, which hinder'd ' ven to

ish † Rover de la Salle from lighting on the exact
 et cast Anchorage degree of Latitude, for the Mouth of
 , where the the River *Mississipi*; insomuch, that
 supply'd with to avoid the exposing of the Men to
 with the Men greater Dangers, he order'd 'em to
 serv'd for the land at the Bay of *Spiritu Santo*, 50
 but that the Leagues below the River they sought
 Mariners, by for: But two Days after, hoping to
 entiously, could discover it, they got on Board their
 Diseases. Ships again, and always taking care
 out from thence to steer into the Main, to shun the
Caimant, and Rocks and Shelves, they at last ar-
 riv'd a great deal higher in a Bay,
 that of *Cuba* afterwards known by the name of
 many Tuns *St. Lewis*. This Bay is of a very con-
 , Sugar, and venient Depth for a Harbour; but
 guarded, the tis dangerous landing there, as well
 ergo, and by reason of the Shelves of Sand that
 e sufficient encompass it; as for the Rocks with
 the loss of ever which 'tis beset on all sides.

' Indeed the missing of the Entrance
 of the River (continued he) would
 have been no great Detriment to us;
 for after having once arriv'd so near its
 Mouth, it would have been difficult
 to descry it, at least by Land; after-
 wards to convey our Ships thither;
 to form a kind of Harbour, to pre-
 vent Mistakes for the future; and e-
 ven to build a regular Port; but ill
 ' Luck

' Luck would have it, that after *M. de*
 ' *Beaujen*, who commanded one of the
 ' three Vessels, was come on Board our
 ' Ship; the two others were lost, as
 ' well by the ill Management of the
 ' Pilot, as by the Carelessness of the
 ' Mariners; for the first ran upon a
 ' shelf of Sand in the Mouth of the
 ' Bay, from whence it was impossible
 ' to get her off, notwithstanding our
 ' utmost Endeavours; altho' indeed
 ' we were so fortunate as to save the
 ' Men, and the best of our Effects. The
 ' other Ship was dash'd in pieces a-
 ' gainst a Rock, even in the very Har-
 ' bour, with the loss of the most part
 ' of the Mariners; but we had luc-
 ' kily unloaded it of all our Pro-
 ' visions and Merchandizes: Besides,
 ' that the greatest part of our Compa-
 ' ny and Goods were set ashore by *M.*
 ' *de Beaujen*, who after having been a
 ' Witness of our Misfortunes, set Sail
 ' to return for *France*.

M. Cavelier having thus related the
 Disasters that beset their Fleet, pro-
 ceeded to give the following Narration
 of the other Adventures and Occurren-
 ces that happen'd during their Voyage.
 ' To reckon (*said he*) from July 24

A. D.

' A. D.
 ' ture f
 ' next Y
 ' at St.
 ' were
 ' having
 ' ments
 ' ving
 ' tuatio
 ' a very
 ' Cows,
 ' that
 ' a great
 ' and th
 ' the ena
 ' Abund
 ' rous H
 ' duc'd t
 ' for him
 ' first m
 ' deline
 ' Orders
 ' his Des
 ' the nec
 ' ments
 ' ency of
 ' ter con
 ' on of th
 ' ly com
 ' Two M

after M. de
one of the
Board our
ere lost, as
ent of the
ess of the
an upon a
outh of the
impossible
anding our
ho' indeed
o save the
ffects. The
n pieces a-
very Har-
most part
e had luc-
our Pro-
s: Besides,
ur Compa-
hoar by M.
ing been a
es, set Sail
related the
Fleet, pro-
Narration
Occurren-
eir Voyage
n July 24
A. D.

A. D. 1684. the Day of our Departure from *Rochel*, to Feb. 18. in the next Year 1685. when we disembark'd at *St. Lewis's Bay*, about Seven Months were pass'd; at what time my Brother having gather'd together the Fragments of our Vessels, and after having discover'd the advantageous Situation of the Country at the Mouth of a very fine River, call'd *the River of The River of Cows*, in the midst of many others that fall into the same Bay, with a great number of populous Nations, and the delightful Prospects caus'd by the enamell'd Verdure of the Lands, the Abundance of Fruit, and the numerous Herds of Cattle, was soon induc'd to cause a fine Seat to be built for himself in those Parts; having at first made the Draught of a Fort, and delineated the Compass of it; giving Orders at the same time for putting his Design in Execution: And indeed, the necessity of building some Apartments for Lodging, and the convenience of procuring Timber and Mortar contributed so far to the carrying on of the Work, that it was entirely compleated within the space of Two Months.

L

'In

‘ In the mean while, *M. de la Salle*
‘ growing more impatient than ever
‘ to recover the River of *Mississipi*, made
‘ Incurfions on all fides to defcry it.
‘ Forasmuch as that whole Country
‘ is divided by a great number of Ri-
‘ vers that empty themselves at divers
‘ Intervals into the Bay ; he sometimes
‘ travell’d by Land, and sometimes in a
‘ Canoo, accompanied with Ten or
‘ Twelve *French Men*, arm’d with good
‘ Fufees: At every one of those Di-
‘ stances he met with feveral Habita-
‘ tions of the Savages, and every where
‘ abundance of all sorts of necessary Pro-
‘ visions, even fo much as tame Fowl.

‘ At laft after Fifteen Days fearch
‘ he met with a fpacious River, and
‘ follow’d the Courfe of it for Seven or
‘ Eight Leagues to the Place, where it
‘ rolls into the Sea, and perceiv’d it to
‘ be really that which he had fo long
‘ fought for, and the Mouth of which
‘ he was not able to difcover: There-
‘ fore he took an Obfervation of its La-
‘ titude again, that he might not mifs it,
‘ in cafe he fhould have occafion to pafs
‘ thro’ that Gulph at any other time. Thus
‘ being well fatisfied with this Discove-
‘ ry, and yet more delighted with the

Fruit-

Fruitfu-
ries, he
out as a
fortune
his Men
those li-
had con-
that abo-
rated b-
remely
out hav-
immode-
that wer-
did not
em, and
that by t-
ual Con-
efponde-
night m-
that Na-
oundanc-
‘ Since
ries app-
o many
egard t-
ultain f-
count, i-
that was
eavour’d
he Hope

de la Salle
than ever
Missipi, made
descry it.
e Country
ber of Ri-
s at divers
sometimes
etimes in a
h Ten or
with good
those Di-
al Habita-
very where
cessary Pro-
me Fowl.
ays search
River, and
or Seven or
e, where it
ceiv'd it to
ad so long
n of which
r: There-
n of its La-
not miss it,
sion to pass
time. Thus
is Discove-
d with the
Fruit-

Fruitfulness of the adjacent Territo-
ries, he return'd to his new Colony;
but as an addition to his former Mis-
fortunes, he soon found that some of
his Men died, quite worn out with
those lingering Diseases, which they
had contracted at St. Domingo, and
that above Forty of them were assassi-
nated by the Savages. He was ex-
tremely afflicted at so great a loss;
but having fortify'd himself against
immoderate Grief, he summon'd those
that were left (the number of whom
did not amount to 100) encourag'd
em, and exhorted 'em to take care
that by the Means of their Labour, mu-
tual Concord, Industry and good Cor-
respondence with the *Barbarians*, they
might make Advantage of the Riches
that Nature afforded 'em, in great
abundance.

Since the newly discover'd Coun-
tries appear'd to M. de la Salle, to be
so many conquer'd Provinces; and in
regard that all the Losses he might
sustain seem'd to him to be of no ac-
count, in comparison of one Nation,
that was voluntarily subdu'd; he en-
deavour'd to comfort himself with
the Hopes of better Success in the Un-
dertaking

'dertaking of some other Voyages, and
 'thus having taken a new Resolution
 'he determin'd to discover those va
 'Territories which are situated betwe
 'the River *Mississipi*, and the Gulph
 'Mexico, to the South-east. On the 22
 'Day of *April*, 1685. he set out from S
 'Lewis's Bay for this new Voyage, tak
 'ing along with him only Twent
 'Persons, among whom were our tw
 'Nephews, *Cavelier* and *De Morange*
 'a Father of the Order of *Recolet* and
 'my self. Our whole Equipage con
 'sisted only in two Canoes, and a
 'many Sledges to carry our Provision
 'and Merchandizes.

'On the first Day we pass'd above
 'Rivers, the Territories lying round
 'about which, appear'd to us to be
 'it were an enchanted Country, and
 'conversed with a very obliging sort
 'People, who deny'd us nothing. 'T
 'also remarkable that in those Parts
 'mong the horned Beasts, in the Mea
 'dows we saw a great number of Hor
 'ses: but so wild, that one cannot
 'come near 'em.

'On the second Day, we began to ge
 'our living by hunting; we kill'd
 'Roe-Buck, and lay that Night, in the o

lle.

M. De La Salle.

149

Voyages, and open Fields, in the middle of a small
new Resolution Retrenchment: Ever since that time
over those vast we made an Agreement to use the
situated between like Precaution in every Place, where
d the Gulph we should have occasion to take up
t. On the 22^d our Lodging.

set out from S^t. On the third Day, about Noon, we
Voyage, tak^e met with Four Booted Horse-men,
only Twent^y who accosted us in a very respectful
were our tw^o manner, asking us who we were, and
d De Morange where we were going? We declar'd
of Recolet and to 'em, that we were *French Men*,
Equipage con and we were only Travelling through
anoos, and a those Countries, with a Design to dis-
our Provision cover the several Nations of *America*,
pass'd above 2 and to offer 'em the Protection of the
s lying round King of the *French*, one of the greatest
to us to be Monarchs in the Universe: And that
Country, and if they were willing to submit to his
obliging sort Power, they should soon be sensible
nothing. 'T of the Effects of his Favour, by the
those Parts means of his numerous Fleet: They
in the Mea on the other side immediately entreat-
lumber of Hor ed us to accept of a Lodging in their
at one cannot Cottages, and to accompany 'em to
their Village: We readily consented
to their Request, and were very
kindly entertain'd by them.

*The Meet-
ing of four
Booted
Horsemen.*

I. 3

This

Quoquis
a Nation
of the Sa-
vages.

This was the Nation of the Quoquis
or Mahis: The Men are of a ve
swarthy Complexion, neither are t
Women more fair; they have ve
fine black Hair; their Eyes be
also black, their Face and Nose fl
and their Teeth very white: Oth
wise, their Carriage is free and un
fected. The Men in those Parts
cloath'd with Corsets of double L
ther, which are Arrow-proof; we
ing from the Waste to the Kne
kind of Pantaloon Breeches, made
the Skin of a Bear, Stag, or W
and their Head is cover'd with a
of Turban of the same Skins: Th
have also Boots or Buskins of the Sk
of an Ox, Elk or Horse, very ar
cially dress'd. For the Horse-Fu
ture, besides their Corsets, Busk
and Bucklers, cover'd with the ha
est Skins; they have Saddles made
many pieces of Leather, fitted
glu'd one upon another; as a
Wooden Stirrups; Bridles like o
and Bits made of the Teeth of a B
or Wolf. As for their Women, t
wear instead of a Bonnet a Context
of Rushes or Reeds, of divers Colo
their Hair being sometimes braid

Their Wo-
men.

‘ and sometimes tied in Knots: Their
 ‘ Body is cover’d with a Vest of very
 ‘ fine Wool, reaching half way down
 ‘ their Thighs: They are shod almost
 ‘ after the same manner as the Men,
 ‘ and wear Buskins on their Legs.

‘ We only lodg’d with ’em one Night,
 ‘ but always stood upon our Guard,
 ‘ watching by Turns from time to time.
 ‘ The next day, the chief Commander
 ‘ came to meet us with certain Presents,
 ‘ as *Indian* Corn, and to assure us, &c. That
 ‘ they should be always very willing to
 ‘ keep an amicable Correspondence
 ‘ with us, and to live under the Laws
 ‘ of that Prince, whom we acknow-
 ‘ ledged: On the other side we made
 ‘ ’em a Present of some Knives, with
 ‘ Glasses, and other Toys, for their
 ‘ Wives; after which we took Leave
 ‘ of ’em, and continu’d our Journey.

‘ About Two Leagues from thence
 ‘ we found our selves on the Banks of
 ‘ a very fine River, which we call’d *Riber Ri-*
 ‘ *Riber* from one of our Retinue, so *ver, why*
 ‘ nam’d, who was drown’d therein. *so call’d.*
 ‘ There were numerous Herds of *Cibo-*
 ‘ *las*, feeding along the sides of this
 ‘ River, of which we instantly kill’d
 ‘ three, and caus’d ’em to be * salted, * *Boucaner*

The River
Hiens.

Biscaton-
ges, a Na-
tion of the
Savages,
furnamed
Weepers.

‘ to serve for our Provision. At the
‘ distance of a League from the same
‘ River we got up another, that is more
‘ rapid, and on which we imposed the
‘ name of *Hiens*, from that of a certain
‘ German of our Company, who con-
‘ tinued Three Days lost thereabouts,
‘ having ventured to go too far into
‘ the Woods, by reason of the great
‘ Delight he took in hunting.

‘ Thus in pursuing our Journey,
‘ sometimes in the Plains, and some-
‘ times across the Torrents and Rivers
‘ which we pass’d in our Canoes, we
‘ arriv’d in the midst of a very extra-
‘ ordinary Nation, call’d the *Bisca-*
‘ *tonges*, to whom we gave the
‘ Name of Weepers, in regard that
‘ upon the first Approach of Strangers,
‘ all these People, as well Men as Wo-
‘ men, usually fall a weeping bitterly:
‘ The reason of their Practice is very
‘ particular; for these poor People i-
‘ magining that their Relations or
‘ Friends deceased are gone a Journey,
‘ and continually expecting their return;
‘ the remembrance of ‘em is reviv’d
‘ upon the Arrival of new Passengers;
‘ but forasmuch as they do not find
‘ in their Persons those whose Loss
‘ they

on. At the same time the same that is more imposed the of a certain, who con- thereabouts, so far into of the great g. Journey, and some- and Rivers canoes, we very extra- the *Bisca-* gave the regard that Strangers, men as Wo- g bitterly: ce is very r People i- lations or a Journey, their return; is reviv'd Passengers; o not find hose Loss 'they

they lament, it serves only to encrease their Grief. That which is yet more remarkable, and perhaps even very reasonable in that Custom, is, that they weep much more at the Birth of their Children, than at their Death; because the latter is esteem'd only by them as it were a Journey or Voyage, from whence they may return after the Expiration of a certain time; but they look upon their Nativity, as an Inlet into an Ocean of Dangers and Misfortunes. Let the case be how it will, this first Torrent of Tears being once over, nothing was to be seen among the whole Multitude of these People, but a serene Aspect, and an engaging Air, full of Kindness and Respect: They conducted us into their Huts that were neatly matted, where they offer'd us some powder'd Beef and Venison, with some *Sagavite*, their Sagavite, a sort of Bread. ordinary Bread; which they make with a certain Root, call'd *Toquo*, being a kind of Bramble. After having wash'd, dry'd, and beaten it to Powder, they make it up into a Paste; which being bak'd, is of a very good taste, but of an Astringent Quality. We added to their Treat a little of our Brandy,

' Brandy, and gave 'em a Couple
 ' Bottles full of that Liquor : Whereupon
 ' on they made us a Present of divers
 ' Skins, well dress'd, which serv'd
 ' make us good Shoes. These People
 ' worship no other Deity but the Sun
 ' and that is the peculiar God of almost
 ' all those Nations : Upon which occa-
 ' sion we told 'em, That our Prince was
 ' the Son of other Kings ; that his Lu-
 ' was spread abroad throughout the
 ' whole Continent of *Europe*, and even
 ' in divers Parts of *America* : That
 ' they would submit to his Authority
 ' they should ere long be sensible
 ' some of the Effects of his Grander
 ' and Generosity. Whereupon they
 ' readily submitted, and took an Oath
 ' to maintain a mutual Friendship with
 ' us for ever.

' Having spent two Days amongst this
 ' weeping Nation, we set forward
 ' gain in our Journey. On the third
 ' Day we travell'd Ten large Leagues
 ' almost continually in the Woods
 ' and afterwards we arriv'd with the
 ' sight of a great Village, in the
 ' distance of which we espy a large
 ' Roe-Buck, which a *Chouanous* of
 ' Retinue, aim'd at, and kill'd with

a Couple
 or : Whereup
 esent of diver
 which serv'd
 These Peop
 y but the Su
 r God of almo
 on which occ
 our Prince w
 that his Lust
 throughout
 Europe, and ev
 erica : That
 o his Authori
 be sensible
 f his Grande
 hereupon th
 d took an O
 Friendship w

Days amongt
 e set forward
 y. On the
 n large Leag
 in the Woo
 arriv'd wit
 llage, in the
 e espy a h
 Chaourous of
 d kill'd with

‘ Fufee-shot. The Report of the Gun,
 ‘ and the Flame that accompany’d it
 ‘ appear’d so dreadful to those Inhabi-
 ‘ tants, that at the very sight of our Com-
 ‘ pany and Arms, they were all ex-
 ‘ tremely terrify’d, and betook them-
 ‘ selves to flight. The chief Comman-
 ‘ der, and three of his Sons, having
 ‘ shew’d more Resolution, brought ’em
 ‘ out of their Panick Fear ; so that they
 ‘ advanc’d towards us, to offer us
 ‘ some Refreshment ; and the use of
 ‘ some of their Huts for our Lodging.
 ‘ during the Night. But my Brother
 ‘ not judging it convenient to trust ’em,
 ‘ we took up our Quarters a little fur-
 ‘ ther off, according to our usual Cu-
 ‘ stom. It was well for us that we
 ‘ were so cautious ; for the next Morn-
 ‘ ing, at break of day, we discern’d a
 ‘ great number of that Rabble, lying
 ‘ in Ambush among the Reeds, and
 ‘ arm’d with Bows and Arrows. M.
 ‘ De la Salle immediately caus’d ’em to
 ‘ be rudely attack’d, and oblig’d ’em to
 ‘ call for Quarter. But they were re-
 ‘ leased for a certain quantity of Indian
 ‘ Corn, which the Son of their Com-
 ‘ mander brought to us, and we im-
 ‘ mediately took a resolution to decamp.

*A Fusée
 let off,
 strikes a
 Terror into
 the Minds
 of the Sa-
 vagas.*

‘ At

The Chi-
nonoas
know how
to distin-
guish the
French
from the
Spaniards.

' At the distance of six Leagues from
' thence we came to another Village,
' consisting of above 300 Huts, inhabi-
' ted by the *Chinonoas*, who receiv'd us
' very favourably. All these Countries
' are situated almost on the Eastern
' Coast of the Sea of *Mexico*; so that the
' *Spaniards* frequently make Inrodes in-
' to them, and abuse the Natives after
' a most outrageous manner: Insomuch
' that these Savages knew how to di-
' stinguish us from them, by the Air of
' our Countenance, our Language and
' Deportment; and the Antipathy they
' had against all those of that Nation,
' serv'd only to encrease their Friendship
' and Kindness towards us.

' We soon gave 'em to understand,
' that there was no manner of Corre-
' spondence between the *Spaniards* and
' us, and that they were our declar'd
' Enemies: Whereupon having offer'd
' us every thing that was in their Pos-
' session, they entreated us to unite with
' them, in order to maintain a vigorous
' War against the *Spanish* Nation:
' We reply'd, That we were not at pre-
' sent in a condition to do it, but that
' we would speedily return, with great-
' er numbers to assist 'em, insomuch,
' that

leagues from
 er Village,
 uts, inhabi-
 receiv'd us
 e Countries
 he Eastern
 so that the
 Inrodes in-
 natives after
 Infomuch
 how to di-
 the Air of
 guage and
 pathy they
 at Nation,
 Friendship
 nderstand,
 of Corre-
 ntiards and
 ur declar'd
 ing offer'd
 their Pos-
 unite with
 a vigorous
 Nation :
 not at pre-
 but that
 with great-
 infomuch,
 ' that

' that having spent the Night very
 ' peaceably among those People, we
 ' departed the next day, laden with a
 ' great deal of *Indian Corn*, and very
 ' fine Skins.

' We had scarce march'd a League on
 ' the Road, when a certain Person of
 ' our Company found himself stung
 ' by a Viper, and suddenly made a hi-
 ' deous Outcry : Within less space than
 ' half a quarter of an Hour, his Body
 ' swell'd prodigiously, and became all
 ' over livid. We immediately made
 ' large Incisions on the part affected,
 ' bathing it with Brandy and Salt of
 ' Vipers, and gave him some *Orvietan*;
 ' so that after Two Days he was per-
 ' fectly cur'd.

*A Man
 stung by a
 Viper.*

' Then we continu'd our Journey, *The Pas-
 sage over
 a rapid
 River.*
 ' and after Two Days march we arriv'd
 ' on the Banks of a very rapid River :
 ' It was requisite to pass it, and we
 ' were then destitute of Canoos ; for
 ' those we made use of before were so
 ' leaky, that they took in Water
 ' on all sides, and we were forc'd
 ' to leave 'em, as being no longer ser-
 ' viceable to us. Therefore we could
 ' find no other Expedient, but to make
 ' a * little Boat of Canes, and many
 ' * Twigs *Cajon.*

‘ Twigs of Trees, twisted one within
‘ another, and cover’d with our best
‘ Skins. My Brother and our two Ne-
‘ phews first went on board with two
‘ Savages to steer it, whilst I stay’d
‘ with the rest of our Company on the
‘ side of the River. They were scarce
‘ got into the middle of the Current,
‘ when the Swiftness of the Stream hur-
‘ ry’d ’em away in a moment, and took
‘ ’em out of our sight: But by singular
‘ good Luck the Boat was stop’d about
‘ half a large League from thence, by a
‘ great Tree that floated on the Water,
‘ being half pluck’d up by the Roots;
‘ so that grappling the Branches, by
‘ the means of certain Poles, they at
‘ last made a shift to get over to the o-
‘ ther side, otherwise the extreme Swift-
‘ ness of the River would undoubtedly
‘ have carry’d ’em into the Sea.

‘ In the mean while, we were very sol-
‘ licitous to know what was become of
‘ ’em; we incessantly follow’d the
‘ Course of our Bank, looking forward
‘ as far as possibly we could, and cry-
‘ ing out with all our force to endea-
‘ vour to recall, or to discover ’em. We
‘ spent a whole Day and a Night in this
‘ Anxiety, and the next Day we began

the fa-
answer
the oth-
sary to
were
to t
fore w
new B
ed, an
any t
strong
veral t
could b
pany b
our Co
Brothe
to stee
mean v
ling t
than a
Mornin
with t
kill’d a
left it a
oi a L
ing giv
attende
the oth-
feasted
nison, a
vision.

one within
th our best
ur two Ne-
d with two
st I stay'd
pany on the
were scarce
ne Current,
Stream hur-
t, and took
by singular
stopt about
hence, by a
the Water,
the Roots;
anches, by
es, they at
er to the o-
reme Swift-
ndoubtedly
Sea.

ere very fol-
as become of
ollow'd the
ing forward
ld, and cry-
e to endea-
er 'em. We
Night in this
ay we began
'the

the same Toil again, till at last they
answer'd us, and we descry'd 'em on
the other side. 'Twas absolutely neces-
sary to joyn 'em, and to that end we
were forc'd to expose our selves
to the same Danger. There-
fore we set about the making of a
new Boat, (for the first was unjoynt-
ed, and no longer capable of holding
any thing) and having provided
strong Poles, we all pass'd over at se-
veral times, with as much safety as
could be wish'd for. Our whole Com-
pany being thus re united, we pursu'd
our Course under the Conduct of my
Brother, who had no other Compass
to steer by than his Genius. In the
mean while one of our Hunters strag-
gling to follow the Game, we lost
him a whole Day. But the next
Morning, we saw him again laden
with two Roe-Bucks: He had also
kill'd another at the same time, and
left it at the Distance of half a quarter
of a League: Therefore, after hav-
ing given us the two, he went back,
attended with an *Abenaguis*, to fetch
the other, and having brought it, we
feasted our selves with part of his Ve-
nison, and kept the rest for our Pro-
vision.

'Hav-

*A Savage
on Horse-
back de-
mands who
we are.*

‘ Having pass’d from thence into the
‘ most delightful and most populous
‘ Countries of all the others, after a
‘ March of Six or Seven Leagues, we
‘ saw making up towards us a certain
‘ Savage on Horse-back, with his Wife
‘ behind him, attended with four Slaves
‘ who were well mounted. This Man
‘ accosting us, enquir’d who we were
‘ and what we sought for in that Coun-
‘ try ? My Brother gave him to
‘ understand, as well by his own
‘ Mouth, as by that of the Savages of
‘ his Retinue, that we were *French*
‘ Men, and that our Design was only
‘ to offer to all the People of their Con-
‘ tinent, as far as the Gulph of *Mexico*
‘ our Alliance, and the Protection of
‘ the King of *France*. Whereupon the
‘ same Savage immediately alighted
‘ presented his Horse to my Brother
‘ and even constrain’d him by his ear-
‘ nest Entreaties to accept of it, and to
‘ go to the Place of their Habitation
‘ assuring him, that he should be very
‘ welcome, and that his Proposal
‘ should be favourably heard. My
‘ Brother, after having return’d him
‘ many Thanks for his Kindness, told
‘ him, that before he proceeded so far

‘ he w
‘ of the
‘ an En
‘ pose.
‘ swer v
‘ plusag
‘ one of
‘ Brothe
‘ his Ne
‘ nous.
‘ Horse
‘ Slaves,
‘ that w
‘ The n
‘ with o
‘ ted on
‘ sorts o
‘ port n
‘ ing, of
‘ had rec
‘ are call
‘ bitation
‘ pass, an
‘ tuated n
‘ are 40
‘ of thick
‘ meeting
‘ form a
‘ inside of
‘ ways ke
‘ tion.

he would very willingly be inform'd
 of the Opinion of his whole Nation, by
 an Envoy, sent to them to that pur-
 pose. The Savage receiv'd this An-
 swer very favourably, and by a Sur-
 plusage of Civility left his Wife and
 one of his Slaves for Hostages: My
 Brother on the other side gave him
 his Nephew *Cavelier* and two *Chaoua-*
nous. The Savage mounted on a
 Horse that belong'd to one of his
 Slaves, and my Nephew *Cavelier* on
 that which was given my Brother.
 The next Day our Envoy return'd
 with our two *Chaouanous*, both moun-
 ted on fine Horses, laden with all
 sorts of Provisions, and made a Re-
 port no less agreeable than surpriz-
 ing, of the kind Entertainment he
 had receiv'd from those People, who
 are call'd *Cenis*. The place of their Ha-
 bitation is extended 20 Leagues in com-
 pass, and divided into many Hamlets, si-
 tuated near one another. Their *Cottages*
 are 40 or 50 Foot high, being made
 of thick Branches of Trees, which
 meeting together in a point at the top,
 form a kind of arched Roof; the
 inside of 'em is well matted, and al-
 ways kept very neat, even to Admira-
 tion.

Cenis, a
Nation of
the Sava-
ges.

M

M.

' *M. de La Salle* being inform'd of
 ' their good Intentions, did not fail to
 ' convey himself thither the next Day,
 ' and saw the principal Elders of the
 ' Nation, who were all adorn'd with
 ' Plumes of Feathers, and cloath'd with
 ' their richest Skins, coming to meet
 ' him, at the distance of 200 Paces from
 ' the Village. My Brother receiv'd
 ' 'em at the Head of his Company,
 ' and the first Salute being given with
 ' Reciprocal Compliments, he was
 ' conducted to the Village by the Com-
 ' mander in chief a-cross a very fine
 ' Body of young Men, drawn up in
 ' Arms, and thro' a very great concourse
 ' of People: Afterwards he and his
 ' Company were led into a Quarter,
 ' which seem'd to constitute a separat-
 ' ed Hamlet, and were there nobly en-
 ' tertain'd. The Commander was con-
 ' vinced of the Magnificence of our
 ' Prince, by the Character he receiv'd
 ' of him from *M. de la Salle*, acknow-
 ' ledg'd him as his Sovereign, and made
 ' my Brother a Present of six good
 ' Horses, and of his finest Skins; who on
 ' the other side presented the said Com-
 ' mander with divers Hatchets, Sizars,
 ' Knives, and Razors, which he ac-
 ' cepted with a great deal of Com-

' cency
 ' the A
 ' call'd
 ' and r
 ' to pr
 ' with
 ' the S
 ' ranni
 ' Visit,
 ' the fa
 ' promi
 ' made
 ' they t
 ' done, t
 ' ship w
 ' The
 ' at the
 ' the Ce
 ' pass in
 ' receiv'
 ' ing wi
 ' and th
 ' And inc
 ' equal A
 ' The Pa
 ' der to
 ' Horses,
 ' longing
 ' to be f
 ' Pullers,
 ' could di

inform'd of
 d not fail to
 e next Day,
 lders of the
 orn'd with
 loath'd with
 ing to meet
 o Paces from
 er receiv'd
 Company,
 given with
 s, he was
 oy the Com-
 a very fine
 awn up in
 at concourse
 he and his
 a Quarter,
 te a separat-
 re nobly en-
 der was con-
 ence of our
 he receiv'd
 le, acknow-
 n, and made
 of six good
 ins; who on
 e said Com-
 hets, Sizars,
 hich he ac-
 of Com-
 'ene

gency and Satisfaction. At that time
 the Ambassadors of a certain Nation
 call'd the *Choumans*, resided there, <sup>Ambassa-
dors of
the Chou-
mans.</sup>
 and the occasion of their Embassie was
 to propose the making of a League
 with 'em, to carry on a War against
 the *Spaniards*, their Enemies, and Ty-
 rannical Persecutors: They gave us a
 Visit, and solicited us to enter into
 the same League; insomuch, that we
 promised to assist 'em, after we had
 made an end of our Voyage; and
 they took an Oath, as the others had
 done, to maintain an inviolable Friend-
 ship with our Nation.

' The *Nassonis* have their Habitations
 at the distance of a Days Journey from
 the *Cenis*, and we thought fit also to <sup>Nassonis, a
Nation of
the Sava-
ges.</sup>
 pass into their Territories, where we
 receiv'd the like Entertainment, meet-
 ing with the same Acknowledgments,
 and the same Protestations of Amity.
 And indeed, all these Nations have an
 equal Antipathy against the *Spaniards*.
 The Pastures in those Parts afford Fod-
 der to numerous Herds of Oxen and
 Horses, and in all the Enclosures be-
 longing to their private Families are
 to be seen many fat Capons, Hens,
 Pullets, and large *Indian* Pigeons. We
 could discern among them, as well as

' among the *Cenis*, some Tincture of the
 ' Christian Religion. For some of 'em
 ' made the Sign of the Cross, and others
 ' express'd to us by certain Marks the
 ' manner of celebrating the Mass; in-
 ' somuch, that we clearly perceiv'd it
 ' to be the Effect of some *Spanish* Missi-
 ' ons: But 'tis not to be doubted, the
 ' Increase would be much greater; if
 ' these first Seeds of Religion were sow'd
 ' among 'em by Persons, to whom they
 ' have less Aversion. And indeed our
 ' Father *Recolet*, by the means of some
 ' Images, Crosses and *Agnus Dei's*
 ' which he distributed up and down
 ' easily made 'em comprehend and be-
 ' lieve every thing that he taught 'em
 ' so great is the Docility of the People
 ' of that Country.

*Sad Dis-
 asters.*

' Notwithstanding the great satisfac-
 ' tion we had among those Savages
 ' yet we met with two sad Disasters
 ' one of which was the Desertion of Four
 ' of our *French* Men, and the other was
 ' my Brother's Sickness. As for the
 ' four Deserters, it is not known whe-
 ' ther they were excited by the Plea-
 ' santness of those Countries, to endea-
 ' vour to settle themselves among some
 ' of the Neighbouring Nations; or whe-

' the

ther being entic'd by the alluring Baits of the Savages, they return'd to the *Cenis*; or whether they retir'd to the *Nassonis*. However, 'tis certain, that as soon as they had Horses in their Possession, they did not any longer imagine themselves to be among the Savages; so that we were not able to retain 'em, neither could we have any Tidings of 'em ever since that time.

'As for my Brother's Indisposition, it was undoubtedly the Effect of Grief occasion'd by the Desertion of some of his Attendants. He fell sick, *August* 24. in the same Year 1685. After three Months travelling, and within 200 Leagues of *St. Lewis's Bay*. His Sickness was follow'd almost at the same time with that of *De Moranger*, our Nephew. However, during that Affliction, we had the good Luck to find among the Savages all the Help that could have been procur'd in *Europe*, except Physicians: For we had every thing that we could wish for, particularly Veal, Mutton, Pullets, Pigeons and Ring-doves; besides, all sorts of wholesome Herbs, as well for Pottage, as for Prisans, Decoctions,

' and other Remedies necessary for sick
 ' Persons. Our two Surgeons were al-
 ' so present, and were very serviceable
 ' to us upon this occasion; nay, the
 ' very Savages themselves, as well Men
 ' as Women, gave us Meat, Fowl, and
 ' other sorts of Venison; insomuch, that
 ' at last (thanks to the Divine Provi-
 ' dence) by the Means of our diligent
 ' Care, both our Patients recover'd their
 ' Health, after a Months Indisposition.

' As soon they had regain'd their
 ' Strength, my Brother being of Opini-
 ' on that he ought to improve his last
 ' Discoveries; and not being able to go
 ' any farther, without entring the Ter-
 ' ritories of the *Spaniards*, from whence
 ' according to all probability, we should
 ' never have come back; took a Resolu-
 ' tion to return to his new Colony.
 ' Therefore we set forward again in our
 ' Journey in the end of the Month of
 ' *September*, 1685. But we had this Ad-
 ' vantage, that we were now in a ca-
 ' pacity to return on Horseback, where-
 ' as we came on Foot; That which
 ' was most surprizing in our new Fur-
 ' niture is, that our Horses without be-
 ' ing shod, had so hard a Hoof, that
 ' they could go any where; and had so

'tender a Mouth, that they gave way
'to the Curb, as if they had been train'd
'up to it : Every one of our Compa-
'ny was reasonably well mounted,
'and our supernumerary Horses serv'd
'either for Change, or instead of Pack-
'Horses, to carry our Provision, Ca-
'noos, and other Equipage; which
'was no small Consolation to us.

'However, since the most useful
'things sometimes prove the most
'fatal, it happen'd either accidentally,
'or for want of Skill, that one of our
'Horses occasion'd the Loss of a Savage
'belonging to our Retinue. For on
'the Banks of the River *La Maligne*,
'on which my Brother run the hazard
'of being lost, a Horse prancing at the
'sight of a huge Crocodile, threw his
'Rider into the Water. He had scarce
'fallen, when that ravenous Beast drag-
'ged him away, and devour'd him in
'our sight. We were extremely trou-
'bl'd at this sad Spectacle; but in such
'Voyages 'tis difficult to avoid the sad
'Accidents, to which those who
'undertake 'em are sometimes liable.
'Therefore the safest way for a Tra-
'veller is to prepare for such Disasters,
'by quieting his Conscience, and by

*A Croco-
dile drags
a Man into
the Water,
and de-
vours him.*

‘ting himself under the Protection of
 ‘Almighty God, who is our Guide,
 ‘and constant Preserver.

‘Forasmuch as no Remedy could be
 ‘found for this Misfortune, we con-
 ‘tinu’d our Journey; and after Three
 ‘Months march, we arriv’d at St. Le-
 ‘wis’s Bay in the beginning of the Month
 ‘of January, 1686. As soon as we came
 ‘near our Colony, we perceiv’d that
 ‘all the Fields thereabouts were clear’d
 ‘of Trees, and well cultivated. We
 ‘there met with a great number of
 ‘Women, and Cottages, fill’d with
 ‘new Families, each Family having
 ‘its peculiar Store of Provisions, with
 ‘a Garden, and other Apartments. In
 ‘a word, every thing seem’d to pro-
 ‘mise a happy Improvement, and a nu-
 ‘merous Increase. My Brother was
 ‘receiv’d there as the Father of this little
 ‘Common-wealth, and we took great
 ‘Delight in observing these beginnings
 ‘of the Incorporation of our *French*
 ‘Men with the Savages, and the good
 ‘Use that every one made of the Ad-
 ‘vantages of this new Plantation.

‘In regard that my Brother’s Pre-
 ‘sence in that Country, was necessary,
 ‘as well for the compleating of the
 ‘Fort,

Fort, a
 State,
 Month
 on of v
 return
 that C
 cruits
 Labour
 Colony
 planted
 America
 every c
 with 2
 travell
 the 1/2
 of Mar
 ‘Altho
 blefome
 cover t
 which
 passing
 to give
 People,
 so that
 portuni
 with ‘e
 River o
 of the n
 with wh
 we pass

Protection of our Guide, could be, we concluded after Three Months at St. Le. of the Month as we came receiv'd that were clear'd vated. We number of fill'd with nily having sions, with ements. In n'd to pro- t, and a nu- other was of this little took great beginnings our *French* d the good of the Ad- tation. ther's Pre- necessary, ng of the ' Fort,

Fort, as for the modelling of this new State, we sojourn'd there about Three Months longer; after the expiration of which time, he determin'd to return to *France* to get new Supplies at that Court, and to procure some Recruits of Tradesmen, Artificers and Labourers, as well in favour of this last Colony, as for all the others that are planted in divers parts of Northern *America*. After having taken leave of every one, he set out, accompany'd with 20 *French* Men for *Canada*, and travell'd by Land to the Country of the *Illinois*, in the end of the Month of *March*, A. D. 1686.

' Altho' this Road was the most troublesome, yet it serv'd not only to discover the Course of the Rivers, of which we only saw the Mouths, in *Many Rivers.* passing down the *Mississipi*; but also to give us a nearer View of all the People, who inhabit along the Banks; so that we might take frequent Opportunities to contract new Alliances with 'em. At first we cross'd the *River of Ducks*, so call'd, by reason of the numerous Flocks of wild Ducks, with which it is cover'd. Afterwards we pass'd *La Sablonniere*, or the River ' of

Quanoati-
nos, a
Nation of
the Sa-
vages.

The Fruit-
fulness of
every
Country.

‘ of Sand, which only has for its Bed
‘ vast Sandy Country; then the *Robe*
‘ the Banks of which are inhabited by
‘ certain People, who all speak in the
‘ Throat, and at last the *Malignant R*
‘ ver, in the Territories lying about
‘ which are the *Quanoatinos*, a People
‘ as formidable to the *Iroquois*, upon
‘ account of their Valour, as for their
‘ Cruelty. For besides that they fight
‘ furiously, without giving Quarter
‘ they made a Law among themselves
‘ to cause as many to be burnt as they
‘ can take Prisoners. As we continually
‘ went forward, we met with the *Tara*
‘ has the *Cappas*, and the *Palaquessons* and
‘ declar’d Enemies of the *Spaniards*.

I shall not here give a large Description of the particular Rarities of all those Countries and Nations; but shall content my self only to declare that altho’ the said Countries are very fine, generally speaking; yet in every one of ’em, its peculiar Nature and Beauty may be more especially observed. For some abound in *Indian* Corn, of which *Frumenty* is made, others in *Tonquo*, and others in *Cassava* of which the Natives make a kind of Bread.

‘ An
‘ la’s is
‘ who l
‘ There
‘ vers an
‘ ceas, t
‘ Quart
‘ very f
‘ As for
‘ among
‘ bours
‘ almost
‘ Staggs
‘ Rams,
‘ have a
‘ In
‘ discov
‘ Savag
‘ a grea
‘ an ent
‘ our M
‘ velling
‘ the M
‘ and w
‘ to hun
‘ our M
‘ usuall
‘ pair t
‘ not co
‘ us goo

lle.

s for its Bed
hen the *Robe*
e inhabited b
I speak in th
Malignant R
s lying abo
inos, a Peop
Iroquois, upo
as for the
that they fig
ing Quar
ng themse
burnt as the
we continual
with the *Tar*
Palauessons a
Spaniards.
large Defor
Rarities of a
ations; but
ly to declar
ries are ver
yet in ever
Nature an
specially ob
nd in *India*
nty is made
ers in *Cassav*
ake a kind

' An innumerable Multitude of *Cibo-*
la's is to be seen amongst those People
who live nearest to the Sea-Coast.
There are also vast numbers of Bea-
vers amongst the *Ouadiches*, the *Akin-*
ceas, the *Iroquois*, and in many other
Quarters of *America*: And Bears are
very frequent in the Northern Parts.
As for Horses, they are only found
among the Nations who are Neigh-
bours to the *Spaniards*, but one may
almost every where see *Orignas*,
Staggs, Elks, Wolves, Ounces, large
Rams, Weathers, and Sheep, that
have a much finer Wool than ours.

' In traversing all these Plains we
discover'd a prodigious Number of
Savages, who all entertain'd us with
a great deal of Courtesie, and with
an entire Submission to the Laws of
our Monarch. Whilst we were tra-
velling between the *Palauessons*, and
the *Nouadiches*, our Provisions fail'd,
and we were oblig'd to have recourse
to hunting; so that three or four of
our Men, most expert in that Exercise,
usually left their Companions to re-
pair to the Woods, where they did
not continue long, without bringing
us good store of Venison. The ad-

' advantageous

A pleasant
Country sit-
uated be-
tween two
Nations.

‘vantageous and most delightful Si-
‘tuation of the Territories that lie be-
‘tween two Nations, who are wel-
‘affected to ours, is much to be ad-
‘mir’d, the whole Country being ex-
‘tremely fertile in *Indian Corn*, and
‘all kinds of Fruits, affording also great
‘variety of Game, and the Pastures a-
‘bounding in Cattel of all sorts, but
‘more especially in Horses. All these
‘great Advantages induc’d my Brother
‘to endeavour to plant a Colony in
‘those Parts. In order to carry on
‘this Design, he judg’d it expedi-
‘ent that I should be sent before to the
‘*Illinois*, as well to inform you of his
‘Arrival, as for some other Reasons,
‘of which I shall hereafter give you an
‘Account. He gave me for my Reti-
‘nue Father *Anastasi*, *Cavelier*, my
‘Nephew, *M. de la Marne*, four other
‘*French Men*, and two Slaves to serve
‘me as Interpreters, with two Canoes,
‘two Pack-Horses, and necessary Pro-
‘visions. We parted *May 15. A. D.*
‘*1685.* and travell’d by Land, as well
‘for the Conveniency of our Horses, as
‘for the frequent Supplies we might
‘get from the Savages, who shew as
‘much zeal for the promoting of our
‘In-

Interel
mies o
‘On
Quarte
receiv’
invited
taining
They
great d
em; t
us all
would
Wome
of ‘em
the litt
niards,
sion to
not giv
stians f
vages.
nial, w
was no
assistin
would
whom
the sam
that wi
‘em. T
the Sav
bundan
lodge i

lle.

delightful Sit-
es that lie be-
who are wel-
uch to be ad-
try being ex-
Corn, and
ing also grea-
e Pastures a-
ll sorts, but
s. All these
d my Brother
Colony in
to carry on
it expedi-
before to the
n you of his
er Reasons,
give you an
or my Reti-
avelier, my
four other
ves to serve
wo Canoos,
essary Pro-
15. A. D.
nd, as well
Horses, as
we might
o shew as
ng of our
' In-

M. De La Salle.

173

Interest, as they are the professed Ene-
mies of the *Iroquois* and *Spaniards*.

'On the first Day we took up our
Quarters among the *Nouadiches*, who
receiv'd us with extended Arms, and
invited us to joyn with 'em, in main-
taining a War against the *Spaniards*:

*Nouadi-
ches, a
Nation of
the Sava-
ges.*

They assur'd us, That there was a
great deal of Gold and Silver amongst
em; that they would willingly leave
us all their Wealth, and that they
would only reserve to themselves the
Women and Children, to make Slaves
of 'em: However, notwithstanding
the little Respect we had for the *Spa-
niards*, we must needs have an Aver-
sion to that Proposal; for we could
not give our Consent, that the Chri-
stians should become Slaves to the *Sa-
vages*. Therefore to colour our De-
nial, we reply'd, That our number
was not sufficient to be capable of
assisting 'em in that War, but that we
would go in quest of Captain *Tonti*, to
whom we would not fail to represent
the same Conditions they offer'd us, and
that without doubt he would accept of
'em. This Answer gave Satisfaction to
the *Savages*, who supply'd us with a-
bundance of Provisions, and caus'd us to
lodge in their best Cottages. 'The

Divers o-
ther Peo-
ple.

The fruit-
fulness of
those Coun-
tries

‘ The next day, we pursu’d our Journey to the *Cenis* and *Nassonis*. The latter gave us Guides to conduct us to the Country of *Nabari*, and these latter in like manner took care to provide other Guides to convey us to the *Nassoni*. We were equally well received by all those People, and we every where found the same Dispositions to make an Alliance with us, and to live under the Protection of our Prince. The Land thereabouts are fruitful, and the Climate very proper for the planting of Vineyards; for Vines often spring up there spontaneously; so that one may see clusters of Grapes growing amongst the Elms, and flourishing under the shadow of their Leaves. One cannot travel three Leagues without meeting with some River or Brook. There are also Herds of Beavers: All the People are generally addicted to the Adoration of the Sun, and have no other Cloaths than a certain Contexture of Rushes, or of very fine Mats, which are set out with Paintings of several Colours, representing the Sun, Birds, Flowers, &c. For matter of Arms, they are altogether unknown to ’em except the Bow and Arrow; inasmuch

‘ that

rsu'd our Jour
Nassonis. Th
 conduct us t
 and thesela
 re to provid
 us to the N
 well receiv
 e every wher
 tions to mak
 d to live unde
 ce. The Land
 , and the Cl
 ne planting o
 ten spring u
 that one ma
 ving among
 ng under th
 One canno
 hout meeting
 ook. Ther
 ers: All the
 dicted to the
 nd have no o
 a Contexture
 Mats, which
 gs of severa
 e Sun, Birds
 er of Arms
 own to 'em
 ; infomuch
 ' that

that the discharge of a Fusée or Pistol
 would appear to them, as it were a
 Clap of Thunder, preceeded by its
 Lightning.

Afterwards we pass'd from the Ter-
 ritories of the *Nassisi* to those of the
Cadodaches, where we were enter-
 tain'd after a very generous manner,
 so that our Reception might well be
 styl'd a splendid Triumph. For the
 principal Elders of the Nation came
 forth to meet us, and conducted us
 thro' two Ranks of their armed Youth
 into very neat Cottages. The rest of
 our Entertainment was as pleasant
 and diverting, as the manner of ma-
 naging it was Savage and Fantasti-
 cal; at first, certain tawny Women,
 but well shap'd, and half naked, were
 very officious in washing our Feet in
 Wooden Troughs, and then we were
 serv'd with different Messes, very well
 dress'd: For besides boil'd Meat, Broth
 and Venison, the ordinary Mess a-
 mong those People; they presented
 us with a large Dish of Roasted Tur-
 keys, Geese, Ducks, and Ring-doves,
 not to forget another Dish of broil'd
 Pigeons. But we were disturb'd in
 the midst of our Jollity, by a very sad
 Accident

*Cadoda-
 ches, their
 Reception
 of the
 French.*

M. de la
Marne
washing
himself in
a River
is drown'd.

‘ Accident, which happen’d to *M. de la*
‘ *Marne*, one of our Company : Foras
‘ much as the Heat of the Weather
‘ was excessive, occasion’d as well by
‘ the Climate, as the Season of the Year
‘ that unfortunate Gentleman had a
‘ mind to wash himself in a River that
‘ runs thro’ the Village. To which pur
‘ pose, having chosen a shady place for
‘ greater Convenience, he threw him
‘ self into the Water, and unhappily
‘ fell into an Abyss, where he was
‘ swallow’d up in a Trice ; some time
‘ after, perceiving that he did not re
‘ turn, we were desirous to go to the
‘ Place, where he retir’d ; but he was
‘ not to be found, and we began to su
‘ spect that perhaps he might be de
‘ vour’d by some Crocodile : However,
‘ the Inhabitants having seen the Place,
‘ where he threw himself in, no longer
‘ doubted that he was lost in that Gulph
‘ And indeed, after having made a search
‘ at the very instant, he was taken up
‘ dead, and quite disfigur’d.
‘ I cannot sufficiently express how
‘ much we were transported with Grief
‘ at the sight of so sad a Spectacle. The
‘ Wife of the chief Governour came her
‘ self to bury him ; and after having per
‘ form’d

lle.

M. De La Salle.

177

form'd the Funeral Obsequies, decently Interring his Body, we set up a Cross over his Tomb: In the mean while, the Savages, who were Witnesses of our Ceremonies, joyn'd their Tears with ours, and endeavour'd to comfort us, by doing us all the good Offices that lay in their Power.

The next day we met with the *Narchoas* and the *Onadiches* on the Banks of the same River, and about five Leagues lower we had a sight of the *Cabinvio's* and *Mentons*. These People not knowing what our Arms were, took us for the Masters of Thunder, and were much afraid of us at the same time. The Beavers are very numerous in their Country, and more especially in the Territory of the *Ozothoa's*, where they are so common, that the Inhabitants are oblig'd to burn their Skins. These People provided Guides to conduct us to the *Akanceas*, on whose Jurisdiction they depend. There we began to know our selves; for we saw a Cross erected, on the middle of which the King's Arms were ext, and some few Paces farther we met with a fine House, built after the French Fashion,

N

and

' and inhabited by a certain Person,
 ' nam'd *Coustore*, who receiv'd us very
 ' kindly, and gave us to understand,
 ' that that Seat, with all its Depend-
 ' cies, was under your Jurisdiction.
 ' After having rested there two Days,
 ' we went to the Villages of the *Tori-*
 ' *mans*, *Doginga's* and *Cappa's*, to get up
 ' to the River *Mississipi*. These last Peo-
 ' ple accommodated us with a * *Piroque*
 ' for two Horses that we gave 'em in
 ' Exchange.

* A sort
 of Boat.

' Thus being wearied with our Tra-
 ' vels by Land, I determin'd to pass on
 ' the *Mississipi* again, to the River of the
 ' *Illinois*, and Father *Anastasis* was very
 ' glad that he had an Opportunity to go
 ' on board the same Canoo with me.
 ' *M. Cavelier*, my Nephew, took five
 ' other *French* Men to accompany him,
 ' and contenting himself with one Sa-
 ' vage, left me another, to serve for
 ' an Interpreter and Rower. Having
 ' met at our Place of *Rendez-vous*, in
 ' the Country of the *Miamis*, we parted;
 ' so that he travell'd over the Plains,
 ' and I embark'd on the River *Mississipi*,
 ' August 15. A. D. 1686.

' It were needless to give a particular
 ' Account of all the Nations that we

met,

met,
 menti
 discov
 chas w
 the Di
 Akance
 industr
 ple, an
 an Ar
 casions
 from t
 ten Lea
 that o
 which
 the Mi
 two Da
 discove
 Banks,
 and in
 Village
 Panalog
 all galla
 tur'd Pe
 Messes
 which t
 some G
 ' On t
 row'd c
 to recov
 ing emb

in Person,
w'd us very
understand,
Dependen-
Jurisdiction.

two Days,
of the *Tori-*
's, to get up
these last Peo-
n a * *Piroque*
gave 'em in

with our Tra-
d to passon
River of the
us was very
tunity to go
o with me.
, took five
mpany him,
with one Sa-
to serve for
er. Having
lez-vous, in
, we parted;
the Plains,
ver *Mississipi*,

a particular
ns that we
met,

met, and therefore I shall only make mention of those whom we did not discover in our Descent. The *Chica-chicacha's*. *chas* were the first that we found at the Distance of 30 Leagues from the *Akanceas*: They are a very docil, industrious, valiant and warlike People, and sufficiently numerous to raise an Army of 2000 Men upon all occasions. We continu'd our Course from thence to the *Onabaches*, within ten Leagues of their River, and saw that of the *Massourites* and *Ozages*, which is no less rapid and deep than the *Mississipi*. We pass'd on it during two Days, as well with a Design to discover the Nations inhabiting on its Banks, as to get some fresh Provisions, and in our Passage we descry'd the Villages of the *Panivacha's*, *Pera's*, *Panaloga's*, *Matotantes*, and *Ozages*, all gallant, numerous, and good-natur'd People, who among the several Messes and varieties of Fruits, with which they treated us, caus'd us to eat some Grapes of an admirable taste.

'On the third Day, after having row'd on that River, we endeavour'd to recover the *Mississipi*; on which, being embark'd in a Canoo, we steer'd

‘ our Course on it for some Days, even
 ‘ as far as the River of the *Illinois*; and
 ‘ after Thirty Days Navigation we ar
 ‘ riv’d at the Foot of *Crevecoeur* Fort
 ‘ from whence we return’d to that o
 ‘ *St. Lewis*. Indeed we were then so un
 fortunate, as not to meet with you there
 (which was no small trouble to us); but
 at present we have the Consolation to see
 you in good Health.

M. Cavelier having thus concluded
 his Relation, we renew’d our Embrac
 ces, but I continu’d for some time
 speechless, without being able to make
 any Application to him; for, to say the
 Truth, I did not well know my self
 nor in what Condition I was at that
 time. On the one side, the loss of our
 Fleet, and of the greatest part of the
French Mariners, was a very great
 Mortification to me; and on the other
 side, the Assurance that was given me
 of M. de la Salle’s Welfare, and of the
 Success of so many fine Discoveries
 oblig’d me to turn my Sorrow into
 Joy. I was also extremely surpriz’d at
 the strangeness of his Adventures; but
 at the same time, the Absence of a Per
 son, for whom I had so particular
 Respect, and whose Return I had

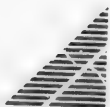
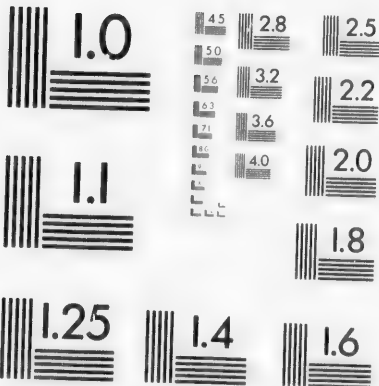
long

e Days, even long expected with the utmost Impa-
 Illinois; and nence; besides, the Regret upon re-
 gation we are fecting, that I was not an Eye-witness,
 revecœur Fort and a Companion of his Travels, pierc'd
 d to that of my Heart with so sensible a Grief, that
 re then so un- was not by any means able to sur-
 with you there mount it. Neither could I any longer
 le to us); but contain my self, or forbear easing my
 solation to se Mind a little, by uttering these mourn-
 us conclude M. Cavalier) how could it so fall out,
 d our Embrace that M. de La Salle, my Patron, and
 r some time my only Support, should spend Two
 g able to make Years in returning to America, and
 for, to say that during that whole Term, I should
 now my self not be only depriv'd of the Pleasure
 was at that of seeing him, but also should not
 he loss of our find Means to hear any Tidings of
 t part of the him? Or how is it possible that I should
 a very great not be permitted to embrace him? I
 d on the other must freely declare to you, that not-
 was given me withstanding the Joy which your Pre-
 , and of the sence affords me, I find my self seiz'd
 Discoveries in beholding you, with a more In-
 Sorrow into tense Grief, since the more I look up-
 ly surpriz'd on you, I am so much the more trou-
 ventures; but led that I have not a sight of him.
 sence of a Pe heavens! (continu'd I) has M. de la
 o particular Salle resided in America Two Years,
 urn I had and cannot I as yet lay hold of some



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

'portunity to meet him, or to speak
 'with him? Alas! 'tis not my Fault
 'for as soon as I could judge, that he
 'had touch'd at any of the Coasts of
 'the Gulph of *Mexico*, I made a descent
 'on those Countries; I search'd about
 'all the Capes and Shoars of that Sea
 'as well on the side of *Malcolina*, as of
 'that of *Mexico*; I visited all the People
 'ple, who inhabit those Coasts, viz. The
 'Pichenos, Ozembogus, Tangibaos, Ojib-
 'noos, Mausoleas, and Mousa's, and en-
 'quir'd of them after M. de la Salle, but
 'none could give me any manner of
 'Account concerning him. Hence
 'then you may take some estimate
 'my excessive Trouble and Sorrow.

'How was it possible (reply'd M. Cavelier)
 'for you to meet us? You were
 'to seek for us at the Mouth of the Bay
 'of *Mississipi*, and on the adjacent
 'Coasts; whereas we only landed
 'Leagues above it: You follow'd the
 'Course of that River, both in your De-
 'scent, and at your Return; but we
 'ways kept at a distance from them
 'steering to the South-east, and along
 'the Gulph of *Mexico*. By what means
 'could you expect to meet with us,
 'following so contrary Courses?

least C
 sent for
 his Re
 and l
 if it
 of th
 the R
 ries c
 be w
 at fo
 spare
 phev
 Hop
 in Pe
 to in
 be co
 Rem
 reviv
 is ing
 is:
 of G
 him
 nu'd
 some
 mun
 fore
 it to
 ratio
 my

le.

or to speak
not my Fault
udge, that he
the Coasts of
made a descent
earch'd about
s of that Sea
alcolina, as
d all the Peo
coasts, viz. The
angibaos, Of
usa's, and en
de la Salle, by
ny manner
him. Hence
me estimate
nd Sorrow.
reply'd M.C.
us? You we
uth of the B
the adjace
nly landed
u follow'd
oth in your D
rn; but we
e from them
st, and also
By what me
et with us,
Courses?

least (said I to him) he ought to have
sent some Messenger, to give me notice of
his Return. 'Tis true indeed, (said he)
'and he would certainly have done it,
'if it had lain in his Power: But who
'of those new Comers could find out
'the Roads that lay cross the Territo-
'ries of so many Barbarians, or would
'be willing to make such an Attempt
'at so great a distance? Or could he
'spare me, or either of his two Ne-
'phews for that purpose? Besides, the
'Hopes he had of seeing you ere long
'in Person, made him continually defer
'to inform you of his Arrival. It must
'be confess'd (said I then) there is no
'Remedy for what is past; that which
'revives my Spirits is, to hear, that he
'is in good Health, and whereabouts he
'is: It will not be long (by the help
'of God) ere we shall go again to find
'him out. In the mean while (conti-
'nu'd I) I call to mind, that you have
'somewhat else more particular to com-
'municate to me from him, and there-
'fore I would entreat you to declare
'it to me, that I may make due Prepa-
'ration, even as soon as it's possible, for
'my intended Voyage.

N 4

' Take

' Take it thus (reply'd *M. Cavelier*)
 ' my Brother being impatient to pro-
 ' cure the necessary Supplies, for the
 ' Establishment and Maintenance of
 ' his new Colony, and to cause two
 ' Ports and two Havens to be built, viz.
 ' One on *St. Lewis's Bay*, and the other
 ' at the Mouth of the River *Mississipi*, the
 ' bottom and sides of which he has very
 ' accurately observ'd, deputed me for
 ' this Employment, only with a Design
 ' that I should incontinently return to
 ' *France*, as well to inform the Court of
 ' his last Settlement, and of his great
 ' Discoveries, as to prepare their Minds,
 ' and to induce 'em to grant what is
 ' requisite upon so emergent an occasi-
 ' on. For that very Reason he also sent
 ' me to *Quebec*, and gave me a particu-
 ' lar Charge to wait upon you, in or-
 ' der to borrow some Money, upon
 ' the Receipt of which I will give you
 ' an Acquittance, and my Brother will
 ' place it to Account.

After this Discourse he presented me
 with a Letter, which was well seal'd
 with *M. de La Salle's* Seal. As for the
 Writing. I did not examine it; and be-
 sides, the Characters us'd by those two
 Gentlemen, who wrote almost the same
 Hand,

Hand, are so like, that 'twould be difficult to find out the difference. However, I read that Letter with extreme Delight; in which, the same Request was contain'd, with Protestations of an entire Trust, and of a most sincere Friendship. The Joy with which I was transported, to hear Tidings of so intimate a Friend; the Candour of the Person who deliver'd the Letter to me; and the Devotion I had made of every thing that I possess'd, to the disposal of a Person, to whom I thought my self infinitely indebted; did not suffer me to take the matter into Consideration. I immediately ask'd M. Cavelier how much Money he desir'd? Whereupon he told me, that he believ'd his Brother had mention'd the Sum of 7000 Livres. *This is true indeed (said I) but if you have occasion for more, you need only demand it.* Since all that I have is at your Service. He thank'd me heartily, and told me, that in case he should stand in need somewhat more, he might procure it in France. Therefore I paid him the Sum of Money agreed upon, at that very Instant, and he insisted to give me a Receipt, according to the Order, which (as he said) he had from his Brother,

Brother. I readily consented, and forasmuch as he protested to me, that he determin'd to set out on his Journey the next day, I gave some Refreshment to his Attendants, and recruited his Provisions. We spent the Remainder of the Day as pleasantly as we could, and very early the next Morning he took leave of me, departing with a *Franciscan Recolet*, and a Slave, with a design to pass into the Country of the *Miamis*.

I was also preparing to pass on the River the next day, and every thing was dispos'd for my Departure. Having spent the rest of the Day, with much uneasiness, the next Morning was putting my small Cargo on board when about Nine a Clock I espy'd coming towards me the *Sieur Constant* my Lieutenant, in the Country of the *Akanceas*, where both the *Caveliers* viz. the Uncle and the Nephew refresh'd themselves for some time: Indeed at first I was very glad to see him, but in a moment after he threw me into a terrible Consternation: I immediately enquir'd of him, where he left *M. de La Salle*? *M. de La Salle* (said he) *do not you know that he is dead* How! (cry'd I) *is M. de La Salle dead*

*The Death
of M. de
La Salle.*

*'Tis too
dead;
Party,
the Pa
'Hey
'possib
'Broth
'and v
'thing
'a Le
'seem
'or C
Inform
Tears,
eviden
asserted
be the j
News.
this A
with C
I was
ther d
self:
I rose
M. de
dead C
his Att
But m
that a
Blood*

nted, and for
to me, that
is Journey th
Refreshment
sited his Pro
Remainder
we could, an
orning he too
th a *Francisc*
ith a design
the *Miamis*.
to pass on th
ad every thin
parture. Ha
ne Day, wit
ext Morning
argo on boar
ck I espy'd o
Sieur Consta
Country of t
the *Cavelier*
e Nephew
ome time: I
y glad to
after he thr
nfestation:
f him, wh
M. de La Sa
that he is de
e La Salle de

'Tis too true (reply'd he) he is certainly
dead; for he was assassinated by his own
Party, in the Territories situated between
the *Palaqueffons* and the *Nouadiches*.
'Hey! what d'ye say? (said I) is it
possible? Why! *M. Cavelier* his own
'Brother but now took Leave of me,
'and was so far from telling me any
'thing of this matter, that he gave me
'a Letter under his Hand, and did not
'seem to shew the least mark of Grief
'or Concern. Sir (said he) I had the
Information from his own Mouth; his
Tears, and those of his Nephew were too
evident a proof of the Truth of what they
asserted; and I am very sorry that I should
be the first that came to bring you so bad
News. I was extremely surpriz'd at
this Answer, and quite overwhelm'd
with Grief, insomuch, that for a while
I was not able to speak nor weep; nei-
ther did I know how to dispose of my
self: However, some Moments after
I rose up, and spoke to this Effect;
M. de La Salle, my only Protector, is
dead (as you say) and murder'd too by
his Attendants! O Heavens! can this be?
But may I know who are those Miscreants
that durst imbrue their Hands in the
Blood of so excellent a Patron? They are
two

The Au-
thors of
his Death.

two *Russians* (reply'd *M. Constore*) nam'd
Dan and *Lancelot*. Ah! wicked *Wretches* (said I) by what *Motive*, or rather,
by what *Demon* were they excited to com-
mit so execrable a *Fact*? Then I entreat-
ed him to tell me all that he knew con-
cerning that *Matter*. 'Alas! Sir,
'(said he) not to trespass too long on
'your *Patience*, I shall proceed to give
'you an *Account* of every particular
'*Circumstance* of his *Death*, as it was
'related to me.

'*M. de La Salle* being recover'd of a
'very dangerous *Disease*, repair'd to
'his last *Colony* at *Fort St. Lewis*,
'and departed from thence, *March* 26.
'*A. D.* 1686. with a *Design* to visit his
'old *Plantations*, accompany'd with
'about 30 *Persons*; among whom
'were his *Brother*, his two *Nephews*,
'the two *Lancelots* *Brothers*, *Dan*,
'a *Savage*, nam'd *Choouanon*; two *Eng-
lish* *Free-Booters*; and one *Hicus*, a
'*German* by *Nation*.

'On the first *Day* of their *March*,
'*M. de La Salle* perceiving that the
'younger *Lancelot*, being still weak af-
'ter his *Recovery* from a violent *Fit* of
'*Sickness*, was not able to follow the
'rest of the *Company*, determin'd to
'send

send
'could
'mean
'standi
'by his
'be par
'celot v
'the pl
'ings
'and In
'gested
'the m
'pen'd
'on th
'cut hi
'broug
'Brothe
'Excess
'laid th
'from
'sportec
'swore
'given
'Comp
'sudden
'signing
'greater
'vourab
'follow
'but af

le.
 (usture) nam
 icked Wretch-
 e, or rather,
 cited to com-
 en I entreat-
 e knew con-
 Alas! Sir,
 too long on
 ceed to give
 y particular
 h, as it was

cover'd of a
 repair'd to
 St. Lewis,
 March 26.
 n to visit his
 any'd with
 ong whom
 Nephews,
 ers, Dan,
 two Eng-
 Hicus, a

eir March,
 g that the
 l weak af-
 olent Fit of
 ollow the
 ermin'd to
 ' send

send him back to the Bay; neither could he be prevail'd upon by any means to alter his Mind, notwithstanding the earnest Entreaties made by his Brother, that they might not be parted; infomuch, that young *Lancelot* was at last oblig'd to return to the place appointed. These Proceedings which appear'd to be Arbitrary, and Imperious, were hard to be digested by a Man of Courage. In the mean while it unfortunately happen'd, that this young Man was met on the Road by certain Savages, who cut his Throat, and the News was brought the same Day to his elder Brother, who could not restrain the Excess of his Grief. He immediately laid the Blame on *M. de La Salle*, and from that very moment, being transported with Rage and Passion, he swore his Destruction. After having given himself up for some time to Complaints and Lamentations, he suddenly stifled his Indignation, designing to let it break forth again with greater Vehemency upon some favourable Opportunity. Therefore he follow'd the rest of the Company; but after Two Months march, their

*The young-
 er Lance-
 lot kill'd
 by the Sa-
 vages.*

' Pro-

'Provisions failing, between the Terri-
 'ories of the *Palaqueffons* and the *Noa-*
 'diches; *Dan* and *Lantelot* made an
 'Agreement to go a hunting in the
 'Woods, and solicited the *Sieur de*
 '*Moranget*, to accompany 'em. The
 'unfortunate Gentleman, without mi-
 'strutting any thing, condescended by
 'way of Complaisance, to grant their
 'Request. But the two *Ruffians*, who
 'being excited as well by Envy, upon
 'Account of his singular Merits, as by
 'the implacable Hatred that they bore
 'his Uncle, had long ago form'd a
 'Design upon his Life; having now
 'insensibly drawn him aside, reek'd
 'their Malice upon him, to which pur-
 'pose they gave him a blow on the
 'Head with a Hatchet, of which he
 'died two Hours after, like a good
 'Christian, heartily forgiving his Ene-
 'mies; of whose Revenge this was the
 'first Effort.

De Mo-
 ranget
 knocks on
 the Head
 with a
 Hatchet.

'The Day being ended, and *M. de*
 '*La Salle* not seeing his Nephew return,
 'nor his Companions, spent the Night
 'in a strange Perplexity: The next day
 'he went himself to the Place, where
 'he judg'd that they might have been,
 'and was soon follow'd by Father *A-*

'*nastafius*,

nastafius
 neither
 found
 for.
 situated
sipi, in
 thro t
 and in
 becom
 The V
 he mig
 and inc
 nate yo
 there,
 ing ov
 the me
 Wretch
 their F
de la Sa
 man, t
 the Hea
 lot had
 upon h
 Face al
stafius:
 the Rep
 ran to l
 not as
 Sense a
 their G

in the Terri
 and the Noa-
 lot made an
 ting in the
 the *Sieur de*
 'em. The
 without mi-
 descended by
 o grant their
 uffians, who
 Envy, upon
 Merits, as by
 at they bore
 o form'd a
 having now
 side, reek'd
 which pur-
 ow on the
 f which he
 like a good
 ing his Ene-
 this was the

 and M. de
 hew return,
 nt the Night
 he next day
 ace, where
 have been,
 Father *A-*
 ' *nastafius*,

nastafius, his Brother and his Lacquey,
 neither was much time spent, ere he
 found the Person whom he sought
 for. For being arriv'd in a Meadow,
 situated on the side of the River *Missis-*
sipi, he espy'd *Lantelot's* Footman
 thro the Grass, which was very high,
 and instantly ask'd him what was
 become of *De Moranget* his Nephew?
 The Villain impudently answer'd that
 he might go look him on the Bank;
 and indeed the Body of that unfortu-
 nate young Gentleman lay extended
 there, and two Vulturs were flutter-
 ing over it, to get their Prey. In
 the mean while those two perfidious
 Wretches lay hid in the Grass, with
 their Fuses ready cockt; and as *M.*
de la Salle was drawing near the Foot-
 man, to chastise him, he was shot in
 the Head with three Balls, which *Lante-*
lot had discharg'd against him; where-
 upon he fell to the Ground with his
 Face all over bloody. Father *Ana-*
stafius and his Brother having heard
 the Report of the Gun, immediately
 ran to him, and found him dying, but
 not as yet altogether destitute of
 Sense and Knowledge. Neither did
 their Grief hinder 'em from assisting
 ' him

‘ him at his last Gasp, at least with re-
 ‘ spect to the Salvation of his Soul :
 ‘ For he had Time and Strength suffi-
 ‘ cient to make his Confession, and to
 ‘ offer up himself to God, as it were a
 ‘ solemn Sacrifice. This was the last
 ‘ Effect of their Rage, and the Tragical
 ‘ end of our Illustrious Hero, and of
 ‘ your good Friend.

M. de la
 Salle's
 Death
 much la-
 mented

These last Words struck me to the
 ‘ very Heart, insomuch, that I had no
 ‘ Strength left to complain : I continu'd
 ‘ dumb and unmoveable for some time;
 ‘ but at last the violence of my Grief,
 ‘ causing me to come out of my Con-
 ‘ sternation by the means of a suddain
 ‘ Flood of Tears: ‘ O Heavens ! (said I)
 ‘ shall I never see *M. de la Salle* again?
 ‘ Alas ! what Hope, what Help is
 ‘ there now left me ? What will be-
 ‘ come of all those blooming Families,
 ‘ of which he was the common Father,
 ‘ the main Support, and the only Con-
 ‘ solation ? What a desperate Condition
 ‘ are they in ? How many brave Under-
 ‘ takings are now spoil'd, and how
 ‘ many Persons are ruin'd by the Loss
 ‘ of one single Man ? Alas ! is it possi-
 ‘ ble that a Person so venerable for his
 ‘ Virtue ; and so useful to *France*, upon

‘ Account

Accou
 that a
 and b
 rous
 his ov
 nihil
 derers
 rifs ?
 Oh ! t
 bring
 Their
 said C
 dy pu
 thoug
 Guilt.
 did the
 or did
 Thun
 their
 These
 had pe
 termin
 the re
 any V
 the tv
 spouse
 their v
 don fo
 that su
 Leave

cast with re-
f his Soul :
rength suffi-
tion, and to
as it were a
was the last
the Tragical
ero, and of

k me to the
that I had no
I continu'd
r some time;
f my Grief,
of my Con-
of a suddain
ens ! (said I)
Salle again?
at Help is
at will be-
ng Families,
mon Father,
e only Con-
e Condition
ave Under-
and how
y the Loss
! is it possi-
ble for his
rance, upon
' Account

Account of his great Discoveries ; or
that a Man so universally respected,
and beloved even by the most barba-
rous People, should be massacred by
his own Followers ? Is there any Pu-
nishment severe enough for these Mur-
derers ; I say, for those wretched Cai-
rifs ? But where shall we find 'em ?
Oh ! that I could discover 'em, and
bring 'em to condign Punishment.
Their Business is already done (then
said *Couture*) those Villains are alrea-
dy punish'd, if their Death may be
thought sufficient to expiate their
Guilt. Alter what manner (said I)
did the Earth open to swallow 'em up ;
or did Heaven strike 'em dead with
Thunder ? No, Sir, (reply'd he)
their Comerades did 'em Justice.
These profligate Wretches, after they
had perpetrated that horrid Fact, de-
termin'd in like manner to destroy all
the rest, that they might not leave
any Witnesses of their Crime ; but
the two *English* Men feigning to e-
spouse their Interest, and to justify
their wicked Action, obtain'd a Par-
don for the Brother, and the Nephew
that surviv'd their Kinsman, with
Leave to bury the two dead Bodies.

O

Whilst

Whilst these two afflicted Relations, and the good Monk were employ'd in performing their last Devoirs to the Deceased, those perfidious Villains ran to seize on the rest of *M. de La Salle's* Effects; the whole Cargo consisting in Ten Horses, some pieces of Linnen-Cloth and Merchandizes, to the value of about 2000 Crowns. As soon as they had taken Possession of all the Goods, the rest of the Company was oblig'd to make a Vertue of Necessity, and to joyn with 'em. The Brother and the Nephew, who had redeem'd their Life by silence, and by a voluntary Resignation of every thing, were likewise forc'd to follow the Torrent. Afterwards they arriv'd at the Village of the *Nonadiches*, among whom dwelt certain *French* Men, who had deserted *M. de La Salle* in his Life-time. These People perceiving the Arrival of this new Company, very well arm'd, and moderately accoutred, were no less overjoy'd to see 'em, than the *French* were, entertain'd 'em very honourably; and at the first Salute invited 'em to be their Companions in their Expedition against the *Quoanantimo's*. It being requisite to suit themselves to the Time; and to

com-
comply
Affairs,
iation,
Father
'In
Dan,
in chier
Lodging
of all t
their Pl
his Cost
the dep
ly expe
the Ger
Spoils o
verthele
sary Ac
to meet
in their
take Car
with for
dition.
the Eng
mands;
Second
fractoring
the Eng
Thou art
ly Maste
Instant,

le.

ed Relations, comply with the present Exigency of
employ'd in Affairs, they all enter'd into that Asso-
voirs to the ciation, except the two *Caveliers*, and the
Villains ran Father *Recolet*.

de La Salle's 'In the mean while *Lantelot* and
consisting in *Dan*, who set up for Commanders
s of Linnen- in chief of the Company, took up their
to the value Lodging apart; absolutely dispos'd
As soon as of all the Effects of *M. de La Salle*, at
n of all the their Pleasure; diverted themselves at
company was his Cost; and made good Cheer. But
of Necessity, the departure of the Savages was dai-
The Brother ly expected. The *English* Man and
had redeem'd the *German*, that had no share in the
by a volunta- Spoils of the Deceased, and who ne-
thing, were vertheless stood in great need of neces-
the Torrent. sary Accoutrements, went well arm'd
t the Village to meet their pretended Commanders
whom dwelt in their Tent, and entreated 'em to
had deserted take Care that they might be supply'd
me. These with some Linnen for their new Expe-
ival of this dition. *Lantelot* treated 'em rudely;
arm'd, and the *English* Man re-iterated his De-
re no less o- mands; and the former made him a
French were, second Denial, with much more Re-
rably; and fractoriness than before. Whereupon
n to be their the *English* Man upbraiding him, said,
tion against *Thou art a vile Traytor; thou hast kill'd*
requisite to *thy Master and mine*; and at that very
e; and to Instant, drawing a Pistol from his

Lantelot
and Dan
assassinat-
ed by an
English
Man and
a German

' Girdle, he shot three Balls into his
 ' Reins, and laid him sprawling on
 ' the Ground. *Dan* immediately ran
 ' to his Fusée, but the *German* soon
 ' stopt his Career, broke his Head, and
 ' kill'd him outright. Some of the
 ' Company hearing the Noise, ran
 ' towards 'em forthwith, and *Father*
 ' *Anastasi* found one stone-dead, and
 ' the other dying: He confess'd *Lante*
 ' *lot*, who was *M de La Salle's* Mur-
 ' derer, and had scarce given him Ab-
 ' solution, when a certain *French* Man
 ' burnt his Hair with a Pistol-Shot
 ' without Ball; insomuch, that the
 ' Fire instantly taking hold of his Shirt
 ' which was very greasie, the misera-
 ' ble Wretch expir'd amidst the Flames.
 Thus those wicked Murderers perish'd
 according to their Deserts, whose Crime
 was of too deep a Dye, to remain long
 unpunish'd, and 'tis not to be doubted
 that those who shall read this Narrative
 will conceive a just Indignation against
 the like bloody Assassins.

' Afterwards the *English* Man and
 ' the *German* made themselves Master
 ' of their Spoils, and offer'd 'em all to
 ' the discretion of the two *M. Cavaliers*
 ' who only took as much as was neces-

' sary

fary for their Journey ; and having left 'em the rest, came to me in the Country of the *Akanceas*. They were the Uncle and the Nephew, accompany'd with *M. de la Marne*, and *M. Joustel*, and a *Chaouanon* Savage, and I had all that I have related from their own Mouth : I was also an Eye-witness of their Lamentations and Tears; they rested Two Days in your House, and on the third following they set out for the *Illinois*. Thus, Sir, I have given you a particular Account of what you desir'd, according to the best of my Knowledge.

'I only convers'd (said I then) with the Uncle and the Father *Recolet*, but as for the Nephew, *M. Joustel* and the *Chaouanon*, I had no sight of 'em. As for *M. de la Marne*, I remember that *M. Cavalier* told me, that he was drown'd; nevertheless, I cannot recover my self from my Surprize, when I reflect on the Constancy and Tranquillity of Mind, with which he related to me the particular Circumstances of his whole Voyage, and all his Adventures. 'Tis a common Saying, that deep Sorrow is dumb, and I dare not call in question the Sincerity of his ;

' but I am certain, that he has made no
 ' Scruple to cross the Proverb. He had
 some occasion to use Dissimulation (re-
 ply'd *Constance*) ' He was willing some-
 ' what to allay his Grief, by the telling
 ' of long Stories; and besides, he had
 ' some By-ends, and some particular
 ' Reasons for such a Deportment at that
 ' time.

' I very well comprehend your mean-
 ing (said I) he was desirous to bor-
 ' row Money of me, and he was afraid
 ' lest I should refuse to lend him any, if
 ' he inform'd me of his Brother's Death.
 ' But alas! I was too much indebted to
 ' his Name and Family, to deny him any
 ' thing. Would to God I had nothing
 ' left in the World, and had not lost my
 ' honoured Protector, my dear Patron,
 ' and my most faithful Friend! But alas!
 ' all our Lamentations are to no purpose
 ' and since we cannot repair so great a
 ' Loss, let us at least arm our selves with
 ' Patience; let us also endeavour to bring
 ' to Perfection what he has so happily
 ' begun.

At that very instant I encourag'd my-
 self in my Resolution to make another
 Voyage, with a Design not only to
 carry Relief to those poor *French Men*
 who

who w
 but all
 prize,
 solatio
 To tha
 for a
 to visit
 ly disc
 mentio

In th
 from
 Govern
 to info
 in a V
 by wh
 make v
 This I
 M. Ca
 those
 make
 much
 There
 1687.
 Men,
 Savage
 Comm
 first Jo
 Illinois
 back

who were abandon'd on the Sea-shoar,
 but also to undertake some new Enter-
 prize, that might afford me some Con-
 solation for the Loss I had sustain'd.
 To that purpose I made Preparations
 for a new Descent to the Seas, and
 to visit all those Nations that were late-
 ly discover'd by *M. de La Salle*, and
 mention'd to me by his Brother.

In the mean while I receiv'd a Letter
 from the Marquis *D'Enonville*, our
 Governour; the Purport of which was
 to inform me, That we were engag'd
 in a War against the *Spaniards*, and War with
the Spa-
niards.
 by which he gave me free Liberty to
 make what Attempts I could upon 'em.
 This Letter, in Conjunction with what
M. Cavelier had told me concerning
 those Nations, who were ready to
 make War with 'em, animated me so
 much the more to hasten my Journey.
 Therefore I set out *Decemb. 3. A. D.*
1687. accompany'd with five *French*
Men, four *Chaouanous*, and some other
Savages, and left my Cousin *De Liette*,
 Commander of Fort *St. Lewis*. My
 first Journey ended in the Village of the
Illinois, and I found 'em lately come
 back from an Expedition against di-
 vers

vers Neighbouring People, from whom they carry'd away 130 Prisoners.

From thence I pass'd to the *Cappa's*, who gave me very good Entertainment, and some time after the *Toginga's* and *Torimans* receiv'd me with the like Demonstration of Friendship and Respect. Then the Course of my Journey brought me to the *Ossotones*, where I built an House for the Convenience of Traffick. There I spent five or six Days, during which, I made new Purchases, and increas'd my Store of Provisions. I departed from my House in the Month of *February*, 1688. and after some Days travelling I got up again to the great Village of *Taensas*. As we were pursuing that Journey, one of my *Chaouanous* being attack'd by three *Chachouma's*, kill'd one of them, and himself receiv'd a slight Wound on the Pap, with the glancing of an Arrow. But a far greater Disaster beset us during that Journey. For two *French* Men of my Company stragling in the Woods to hunt, were assaulted by a Party of *Naches*, and unfortunately kill'd. We were so much the more sensible of this Indignity, in regard that 'twas impossible for us to revenge it, not being able

from whom
soners.

the *Cappa's*,
Entertain-
the *Toginga's*
with the like
ship and Re-
of my Jour-
nes, where I
venience of
five or six
the new Pur-
store of Pro-
my House in
3. and after
up again to
s. As we
one of my
three *Cha-*
and him-
on the Pap,
row. But
us during
ch Men of
the Woods
a Party of
ill'd. We
ble of this
twas im-
not being
able

ble to come up with those Sa-
ages.

Upon our Arrival among the *Taen-*
us, the principal Elders of that Na-
tion inform'd me of the Contest they
had with the *Nachitoches*, about Salt,
of which, the latter would not suf-
fer 'em to have any share, and entreat-
ed me to be Mediatour for the making
up of their Differences. I readily ac-
cepted of the Office; so that Thirty
Taensfas having joyn'd our Company,
we arriv'd after Eight Days march, at
the Village of the *Nachitoches*. This Nati-
on constitutes only one State with two
others, viz. the *Ouasita's* and the *Capi-*
his. The chief Commanders of these
three sorts of People being met toge-
ther, they caused me to sit down in
the middle of 'em; but the Thirty
Taensfa's, before they took their place,
besir'd Leave to go to the Temple, to
implore the Assistance of their God,
for the obtaining a firm Peace. (Here
tis observable by the way, that the
Sun is the Deity which is most com-
monly ador'd among all those People.)
Therefore these *Taensfa's* were actually
conducted to the Temple; and after
having said their Prayers, were brought
back

A quarrel
between
the *Taen-*
sa's and
the *Nachi-*
toches a-
bout Salt.

back to the Assembly, where they call'd their God to witness the Sincerity of their Intentions, as to the matter of Peace; made their Presents to the three several Nations; and nominated me for the Guarantee of their Treaty. Whereupon I promoted their Interest as far as it lay in my Power, making the best of their Claim, and at last brought Matters to a good Accommodation, insomuch, that the *Nachitoches* promised to supply 'em with Salt, in exchange for their Skins and Grains. Upon the breaking up of the Convention, they took a reciprocal Oath to maintain Peace and an Amicable Correspondence one with another, and danc'd the *Calumet*, according to the usual Custom of the *Americans*. Afterwards I took my leave of both those Nations.

The *Nachitoches* provided Five Guides to conduct me to the Village of the *Tataches*, and to go thither; I was oblig'd to pass on the River *Onoroyste* about 30 Leagues. During our Course we found fifteen Cottages of the *Naches*, and took up our Lodging amongst 'em that Night, continually standing upon our Guard. The next day, having met with Twelve of 'em apart, we did not spare

where they spare 'em, but reveng'd the Death of
 the Sincerity of our *French* Men, whom they had bar-
 barously assassinated. After having
 the matter of Travell'd for some Days, we arriv'd in
 the Territories of the *Tataches*, who are
 united to two other Nations, that make
 three Villages together, viz. the *Tata-*
ches, the *Onodo's*, and the *Choyo's*. As
 soon as they had notice of our Arrival,
 they came three Leagues to meet us,
 and brought us good Provisions for our
 Refreshment. Afterwards we went
 out of the Champion Country to their
 Village, and the chief Elders enter-
 tain'd us at several Feasts. Then I
 made 'em some Presents, and desir'd
 that I might have Guides to conduct
 me to the *Quodadiquio's*. They made
 a great deal of difficulty to grant me
 any, by reason that three Days ago
 they massacred three of their Ambassa-
 dors; nevertheless, by the means of
 Entreaties and Protestations to defend
 'em, they were at last prevail'd upon to
 furnish us with five.

When we drew near the three Vil-
 lages, we discern'd the Tracts of Horses
 and Men on the Road, and indeed in
 the Morning divers Horsemen appear'd,
 and offer'd to convey us thither. I
 was

A remark-
able Ad-
venture.

was attended with 20 Fusileers, well arm'd, and so in a Condition to keep those Savages in awe. I had no sooner enter'd the Village, but a certain Woman, who held the first Rank in that Country, made an Address to me, and importun'd me to revenge her Husband's Death, who was kill'd by the *Tataches*. A little while after another Woman came to me, to make the same Complaint, and they apparently were the Wives of those Ambassadors, whom the *Tataches* had assassinated not long before. All the People seem'd to be concern'd at their Death; and forasmuch as they were very solicitous about that Affair, I made a Promise both to the Widows, and to the People, to take Vengeance for the Murder of their Husbands and Ambassadors. Then they conducted me to their Temple, wash'd my Face with Water, before they permitted me to enter; and after having pray'd to God for the space of one quarter of an Hour, they led me back into the Cottage of one of those Women, where I was magnificently entertain'd. There I was inform'd, that the Seven French Men, who were separated from *Cavelier*, after the Death

of M. d
the *Nou*
ed with
to put a
once fir
Therefo
Day an
reated
and affi
would e
em Sa
Blood fo
The
other N
the *Naj*
uated
Nations
their A
Village
mote o
tries are
of Gam
are ve
mainta
bours;
not ver
ry fine
o's. T
Faces
Parts o

lle.

ufileers, we
tion to keep
had no sooner
certain Wo
Rank in tha
s to me, and
ge her Hus
kill'd by th
after another
ake the same
arently were
adors, whom
ed not long
eem'd to be
d forasmuch
s about that
both to the
ple, to take
der of their
ors. Then
eir Temple,
ter, before
; and after
he space of
hey led me
ne of those
gnificantly
inform'd,
who were
the Death
of

M. De La Salle.

205

of M. de la Salle, were still living among the *Nonadiches*. I was extremely delighted with this piece of News, and hop'd to put an end to my Evils, if I could once find means to meet 'em again. Therefore having pass'd the rest of the Day among the *Quodadiquio's*, I entreated 'em to furnish me with Guides, and assur'd 'em, That at my Return I would either oblige the *Tataches* to give 'em Satisfaction, or I would require Blood for Blood at their Hands.

The *Quodadiquio's* are united to two People united together. other Nations, viz. the *Nappitoche's* and the *Naffonis*, whose Territories are situated on the red River. These three Nations speak the same Language, yet their Assemblies are not conven'd by Villages, but by Habitations, very remote one from another. Their Countries are very fine, affording abundance of Game, and variety of Fish; but there are very few Oxen. These People maintain cruel Wars against their Neighbours; insomuch, that their Villages are not very populous. They all have very fine Horses, which they call *Cavallios*. The Men and Women have their Faces prick'd, and even all the other Parts of their Bodies: And indeed the Fan-

The Red
River.

Fantastical Humours of Men is altogether such as
unaccountable, since that which is look'd upon
upon as Deformity in one Country, passeth the next
for Beauty in another. Their River, call'd
ver is call'd the Red, because it actually
throws up abundance of Sand, which
renders it as red as Blood.

I set out from thence April 6. A. D. 1690. with two Slaves, who were my
Guides, for the Country of the *Nouadiches*. As we were travelling on the
Road, we met with certain Savages of that Nation a hunting, who assur'd us,
that they had left our *French Men* at home, which was very joyful News to
me, but at the same time I had the Misfortune to lose a young *French Man*
of my Retinue: He found means to return three Days after, but without
his Snap-sack, where I had put the best part of my Provisions, which created
me a great deal of trouble. However, not thinking fit to take any notice of
his Neglect, we took up our Quarters that Night within half a League of the
Village of the *Nouadiches*, where the principal Elders came forth to meet us.
I instantly enquir'd of 'em after our *French Men*, and they answer'd, that
they were in good Health; but forasmuch

is altogether such as they were not to be seen, I
 which is look'd could promise my self no Good by it.
 Countr., pass'd the next day, being arriv'd at their
 Their Rivillag, and none of 'em appearing,
 it actually by Suspicion was still increas'd. The
 Sand, which Chief Governors of the Nation did not
 fail to offer me the *Calumet*; but I re-
 April 6. A. D. us'd to accept of any thing at their
 no were my lands, till they had produc'd the *French*
 of the *Nous-Men*. When they perceiv'd that I per-
 sisting on the staid in my Resolution, they confess'd
 in Savages of that our *French Men* having accompa-
 to assur'd us, they'd 'em in the War against the *Spani-*
French Men at *lands*, were surrounded by the Horse;
 ul News to that three of 'em were kill'd; and that
 e I had the the other four retiring to the *Quoanan-*
French Man *no's*, they never heard any Tidings of
 means to 'em since that time. I reply'd, That
 out without certainly they themselves had murder'd
 put the best 'em; they deny'd it stiffly, and foras-
 much created much as I incessantly accus'd 'em, their
 However, Wives fell a weeping, and made me
 notice of understand by their Tears, that the In-
 r Quarters formation concerning their Death was
 ague of the so true.
 where the The *Nonadiches* us'd their utmost Ef-
 to meet us. orts to clear themselves, and offer'd
 after our the *Calumet* a second time; I to'd
 er'd, that 'em that I would not accept of it till I
 but foras- ere thoroughly convinc'd of their In-
 much nocence

nocence as to that Point, and that nevertheless if I could be serviceable to 'em in any thing, they should find my Fidelity inviolable. The chief Commander answer'd my kind Expressions with a Present of Ten fine Horses, well harness'd, and I gave him seven Hatchets, with a Set of Glasses.

We left their Country May 29. and advanc'd within a Days Journey of the *Palaqueffons*, where we were inform'd that the last Colony establish'd by *M. de la Salle*, on the Coast of the Gulf of *Mexico*, not having been able to maintain it self in a perfect Union, was quite dispers'd; that some were intermixed with the Savages, and that others found Means to get to the French Plantations in other Places. Therefore not judging it expedient to seek for 'em where they were no longer to be found, I took a Resolution to return the same way I came. In the mean while I endeavour'd to pass the Village of *Coroas*, but a prodigious Inundation happening, by reason of the extraordinary Rains, which continued for Three Days successively, we were involv'd in the greatest Streight imaginable: For the Water every where

rose up
fornucl
and to
though
provide
son:
in this
Luck
small
as yet
ther fo
ses we
the Gr
excessiv
Climat
to the
ficientl
ment w
who e
day in
to treat
dance
Turkey
my Joy
Men,
Nouadie
and tha
tunity
pany.

rol

lle.

nd that never
ceable to 'em
d find my F
chief Com
Expressions
Horses, we
m seven Hat
es.

May 29. an
ourney of th
vere inform
olish'd by M
of the Gulph
been able to
t Union, wa
e were inter
and that o
to the French
ces. There
dient to feel
no longer to
lution to re
me. In the
d to pass to
a prodigious
reason of the
ch continu
y, we were
eight imag
every when
roll

rose up to the middle Leg at least; in-
somuch, that we were forc'd to sleep,
and to make Fires on thick Trees, and we
thought our selves happy, in being then
provided with Cassave, Beef and Veni-
son: We continu'd three or four Days
in this forlorn Condition, but as good
Luck would have it, we discover'd a
small Island, which the Waters had not
as yet overflow'd, and we retir'd thi-
ther for a Day and a Night: Our Hor-
ses were somewhat recruited there, and
the Ground being suddenly dry'd by the
excessive Heat of the Season, and of the
Climate, we got up in a Days Journey
to the Village of *Coroas*. I cannot suf-
ficiently express the noble Entertain-
ment we met with among those People,
who employ'd several Persons every
day in fishing and hunting, on purpose
to treat us, and supply'd us with abun-
dance of Pullers, Geese, Pigeons and
Turkeys. But that which redoubled
my Joy is, that two of those *French*
Men, whom I sought for among the
Nouadiches, were luckily found here;
and that I had so favourable an Oppor-
tunity to re-unite 'em to my Com-
pany.

*Coroas, a
Savage
People.*

I took my leave of the *Coroas*, July 20th. and arriv'd on the 31th. in the Territories of the *Akancea's*, where I was seiz'd with a Fever, which oblig'd me to stay there till August 15. After I had a little recover'd my Strength, I set forward again in my Journey to the Country of the *Illinois*, and arriv'd there in the Month of September. Thus the Treaty of Peace concluded between the *Taensa's* and the *Nachitoches*; the pleasure of being most kindly entertain'd by all the Savage People; and the Satisfaction of bringing back two *French Men*, whom I had given over for lost; were the Fruits of my last Voyage.

By this Relation one may take an estimate of the Riches and Beauty of all those Countries, inhabited by so many People, that are all in a manner already brought under Subjection, and who have a perfect Idea of the Grandeur of our Monarch. It cannot be conceiv'd how much that Continent abounds, as well in all sorts of Grain and Fruit, as in variety of Cattel. 'Tis surrounded on all sides with great Seas, the Shoars of which are very deep, and seem to present us with natural Ports;

Coroas, July 16. in the Territories; insomuch, that three or four Ravens on the Gulph of *Mexico* would where I was undoubtedly secure for us the Possession oblig'd me those Territories. The *French* are 5. After I generally so well belov'd, that to make Strength, I myself Masters of 'em, they have Journey to nothing to do but to settle there incon- and arriv'd gently, and to plant their Colonies. ber. Thus that is wanting, may be transported led between either by our Vessels; as in like man- itoches; the er, what is wanting in our Country, ndly enter- ay be brought us from thence. For eople; and om those Parts we have our principal back two ores of Skins; we might also get given over lks, Timber for Ships, and divers o- of my last er Commodities. If there be a scarcie- of Corn and Wine, 'tis less occasion'd ay take an the defect of the Soil, than for want d Beauty of the Improvement of Husbandry. dited by so astly, to procure all the Treasures of n a manner ature, 'tis only requisite to bestow ection, and me Pains in seeking for 'em, and to the Gran- mprove 'em when found. Such is the cannot be ate of Affairs in that Country: God ontinent a- ant that a happy and lasting Peace s of Grain ay soon put us in Possession, and le- attel. 'Tis re us in the Enjoyment of these Ad- great Seas, ntages. very deep, th natural Ports;

F I N I S.

R

V

Sie

Ca

C

A De
de
M
the

Lon

A
RELATION
OF A
VOYAGE

Made by the
Sieur de Montauban,
Captain of the *French* Privateers,
ON THE
Coasts of *Guinea,*
In the Year 1695.

WITH

A Description of the Kingdom of *Cape de Lopez*; and an Account of the Manners, Customs and Religion of the Natives of that Country.

London : Printed in the Year 1698.

ALE

SII

I *Ha*
th
band,
I have
mire w
by the
Courage
weighty
Person
unavoid
to Min
Narrat
his Se
from n
undert
gives n

He
met d
Cape
Ordna
up wit
and to
Aster

A LETTER to Monsieur * * * *

SIR,

I Have at last receiv'd the Relation of the Voyage, made by Capt. Montauban, commonly call'd Montauban, and I have sent it you printed. You will admire without all Doubt, as well as I, how by the means of his singular Prudence and Courage, he extricated himself from those weighty Pressures, under which any other Person in his Circumstances, would have unavoidably perish'd: You may also call to Mind in reading the beginning of this Narrative, that you had a sight of some of his Seamen at Bordeaux, A. D. 1694. from whence he set out the next Year to undertake the Voyage, of which he here gives us a particular Account.

He gave chase to divers Ships that he met during his Course, and engag'd at Cape Verd, with a Frigate of 34 Pieces of Ordnance. At St. John's Cape he came up with an English Vessel of 20 Guns, and took her after a small Engagement. Afterwards he took a Caper of Branden-

burg, and steer'd his Course to Angola. At last he discover'd the English Guard-Ship, arm'd with 54 Pieces of Cannon near the Coast, and fought her during five or six Hours, till they both came to boarding with great Fury. But when he was just ready to master her, the English Captain set fire to his whole store of Powder, and both the Ships were blown up into the Air, with a most dreadful Noise and Hivock.

You may have the satisfaction to take a view of so terrible a Shipwreck in this Narrative, as it were on the Sea shoar, and to observe how Capt. Montauban makes his Escape with Fifteen or Sixteen of his Men. He suffer'd Hunger above Three Days, and at last arriv'd at Cape de Lopez, where he went to visit the King of the Country: He has given us a Description of the Court and Kingdom of that Prince; treating at the same time of his Religion, and forming a Project for the establishing of the Roman-Catholick in those Parts. He stood Godfather to the King's Grand-son, by his Son Prince Thomas, and embark'd in a Portuguese Vessel, to return to Europe. An English Man of his Acquaintance took him on board his Ship, and convey'd him to Bar-

to Angola. Barbadoes, where he was confin'd in a
lish Guard-chamber by the Order of M. Russel, Go-
of Cannon-vernour of the English Island. After-
during five wards he was set at Liberty, and tran-
e to board-ported to Martinica, where he was pre-
then he was sent at the Death of M. de Blenac, Ge-
inglish Cap-neral of the French Islands. From thence
of Powder, he pass'd over into France, and continu'd
up into the very doubtful whether he should try his
Noise and Fortune again by Sea or not.

All these Particulars (Sir) are related
on to take in so plain and natural a Style, that you
eck in this may clearly discern the Integrity and Gene-
Sea shoar, rosity of the Author. Indeed it must be
urban makes acknowledg'd that Sailers and other Per-
teen of his sons, taken up with the Management of
bove Three Maritime Affairs, are nothing near so po-
Cape de site, as those that have Employments on
the King the Land, by reason that they do not keep
n us a De- so much Company, and have not an oppor-
lom of that tunity of conversing so frequently with the
ime of his more refin'd Wits of the Age; but to make
et for the amends for this Defect, they are ge-
holick in nerally a great deal more sincere. There-
her to the fore you need not fear, lest a Sea-Captain
n Prince should impose on your Credulity: Besides,
a Portu- I have often heard him making a Narra-
pe. An tion of the same Voyage, yet never could
et took him perceive him to vary in the least Circum-
d him to stance; insomuch, that the Candour and
Bar-free

free Air, with which he was wont to relate the bravest Actions that were perform'd in the Engagements, would soon persuade his Hearers to believe, that what he said was certainly true. Neither did he write this Narrative thro' Ostentation, since he himself sufficiently declares in the beginning of it, that he did it only to give an Account of his Expeditions to a Minister of State. Lastly, if you still doubt of the Fight, in which the Sieur de Montauban suffer'd Shipwreck, you cannot but remember that you have read it in the Gazettes of the Month of September or October, of the present Year.

I am,

S I R,

Your most Humble, and

most Obedient Servant,

B * *

R F

V

Sieur

Captain
on the

A F

and have
tune, lost
together
should take
Misfortune
dition ;
still more
Private
jesty the
did not

A
RELATION
OF THE
VOYAGE
OF THE

Sieur de Montauban,

Captain of the *French Privateers,*
on the Coasts of *Guinea, A. D. 1695.*

AFTER having been so often made
sensible of the Malignant Influences
of the Planet that governs at Sea;
and having, by the means of a cross For-
tune, lost all the Goods which I had gather'd
together, with so great Care and Pains, I
should take no Delight in calling to Mind the
Misfortunes that put an end to my last Expe-
dition; were it not that the Desire of being
still more serviceable to the Publick, and to
Private Persons, as also to testifie to his Ma-
jesty the fervent Zeal I had for his Service,
did not oblige me to set Pen to Paper, to
give

give some Account of my Observations to *M. Phelippeaux*, in which he may discern with what Earnestness I penetrated into the most remote Colonies of the Enemies, to destroy 'em, and to ruin their Commerce.

I was not willing to enlarge this Relation with an Account of all the Voyages I made, and of all the particular Adventures that befell me on the Coasts of the *New Spain, Carthage, Mexico, Florida, New-York, New-England, Newfoundland, the Canary Islands, and Cape Verd*, where I cruised up and down above Twenty Years, having begun to follow the practice of Navigation at the Age of Sixteen. I might also add the Expedition of the Year 1691. in which, being Commander of the Ship, call'd *The Machine*, I ravag'd the Coasts of *Guinea*, enter'd the great River of *Serrelion*, seiz'd on the Fort of the *English*, in which there were 80 pieces of Cannon, and caus'd 'em to be blown up, that they might not be refitted: But I will confine myself to the Narrative of my last Voyage, because 'tis the latest, and that which is still fresh in Memory, as having been made known publickly by the Report that was spread abroad in *France* and elsewhere, about the firing of my Ship, and the blowing me up into the Air, after so prodigious a manner.

In the Year 1684. after having ravag'd the Coast of *Carrack* I got the Wind to *Santa Cruz*, and was inform'd there, that a Convoy of Ships was to set out from the Islands
of

of *Bar*
upon
Bermu
small
Prize.
appear
out any
Convo
Merch
having
Fight.
met wi
Guns,
wife s
after
her to
adjudg
having
Ships
Month
were i
Prize,
chants

In th
had no
now an
luptuo
were d
mends
during
tive C
tously
gave v
The

Observations to
discern with
into the most
s, to destroy
rce.

this Relation
pages I made,
tures that be-
Spain, Car-
York, New-
anary Islands,
up and down
begun to fol-
at the Age of
Expedition of
Commander
ravag'd the
reat River of
the English,
of Cannon,
o, that they
I confine my
Voyage, be-
which is still
been made
rt that was
where, about
blowing me
ious a man-
ing ravag'd
nd to Santa
that a Con-
the Islands
of

Sieur De Montauban.

9

of *Barbadoes* and *Nevis* for *England*. Where-
upon I was oblig'd to go to the Latitude of
Bermudas, with a Design to seize on that
small Fleet, and in hopes of getting a good
Prize. I was no sooner arriv'd, but they
appear'd steering directly towards me, with-
out any manner of Fear; but I attack'd the
Convoy, call'd the *Wolf*, with two other
Merchant-Ships, laden with Sugar; the rest
having found means to escape, during the
Fight. As I was carrying off this Prize, I
met with another *English* Vessel of Sixteen
Guns, that came from *Spain*, and was like-
wise sailing for *England*: She surrender'd
after a slight Engagement, and I convey'd
her to *Rochel*, where the Court of Admiralty
adjudg'd her to me as lawful Prize. After
having sold her, I brought my three other
Ships to *Bordeaux*, where I arriv'd in the
Month of *September*, *A. D.* 1694. These
were in like manner allow'd to be good
Prize, and I immediately sought for Mer-
chants to dispose of 'em.

In the mean while my Free-Booters, who
had not seen *France* for a long time, being
now arriv'd in a great City, in which Vo-
luptuousness and Luxury are predominant,
were desirous to make themselves some a-
mends for the Fatigues they had endur'd,
during so long an Absence from their Na-
tive Country: Insomuch, that they rio-
tously wasted vast Sums of Money, and
gave way to all Actions of Extravagance.
The Merchants and Victuallers made no
scru-

scruple to trust 'em, or to supply 'em with whatever they desir'd, upon the Reputation of their Wealth, and the Report that was given out in the City, with reference to the great Prizes in which they had a Share. Thus they pass'd all the Nights in variety of Divertisements, and the Days in running about the Streets in Masquerade, causing themselves to be carry'd in Chairs, with lighted Torches at Noon-day: This Excess of Debauchery destroy'd some of 'em, and four others deserted me; so that perceiving that I lost my Men, notwithstanding all my Precaution, and all the Prohibitions that I could make, I determin'd to retire from the City as soon as 'twas possible, to preserve the rest of my Company.

At first I fill'd up again the Vacancy of those that were lost, by an equal number of young Men of *Bordeaux*, who in a short time were as capable of playing their Parts as the oldest. And indeed, I always take a particular Care to instruct my Men in the best manner of firing a Piece, and the frequent Exercise, with which I usually train 'em up, within a little while, renders 'em as expert in shooting right at a Mark, and in handling their Arms, as the most ancient Free-booters of the Sea, and the most skillful Hunters on Land.

After having victuall'd my Ship, which carry'd about 34 Pieces of Ordnance, I set out from *Bordeaux* in the Month of *February*, *A. D.* 1695. with a Design to cruise on the

Sieur De Montauban.

11

ply 'em with the Reputation of that was reference to the had a Share. Its in variety ys in running ade, causing Chairs, with y: This Ex- some of 'em, so that per- withstanding Prohibitions in'd to retire s possible, to y. Vacancy of al number of a short time their Parts as ways take a Men in the and the fre- usually train nders 'em as ark, and in most ancient he most skil- ship, which nance, I fet h of *Februa-* to cruise on the

the Coasts of *Guinea*, in *Africa*. To that purpose I pass'd to the Islands *Azores*, which lie in the 37th. Degree of Latitude, and mov'd up and down during Eight Days, without discovering any thing. From thence I steer'd to the *Canary* Islands, situated in the 25th. Degree, and descry'd the Pike of *Terreferriff* at a very great distance, which is reputed to be the highest Mountain in the World. 'Tis reported that those Islands took their Name from *Doggs*, call'd *Canes* in *Latin*, great Numbers of which were found there by the *Portugueses*. I sail'd round about 'em for Fourteen Days, to wait for certain *Dutch* Vessels, which (as I was inform'd) were to come that way; and indeed, they actually appear'd, but enter'd the Port before I could come up with 'em; which Disappointment oblig'd me to steer my Course for *Cape Blanc*, and the Islands of *Cape Verd*, which lie between the 14. and the 18. Degree of Southern Latitude. Upon my Arrival, I met with two *English* Ships riding at Anchor in the Road of the Island of *May*. I sent out my Shallop to discover 'em; and forasmuch as she brought me word, that they were Privateers or Interlopers, of 30 Guns apiece, I took a Resolution to take 'em by boarding; and therefore tack'd about, to make up to 'em: But whilst I was running a Course on one of the Points of the Island, those Vessels did not stay till I had tack'd about again; but suspecting my Design, they speedily set sail, leaving their Cables, Anchors and Shallops on the Road.

I

I pursu'd 'em all that day ; but the Night approaching, I lost the sight of 'em, and return'd to the Road, from whence they set out, to hoist up the Cables and Anchors, and to sink the Shallops, to which they were fasten'd. Afterwards I steer'd my Course to the Island of *St. Vincent*, to pay my Ship, and to take in fresh Water and Wood. This Island is one of those of *Cape Verd*, or *Green-Head*, where I stay'd Eight Days, and at the end of that Term, having receiv'd Information from a *Portuguese* Bark, that there were two *English* Privateers of 20 or 30 Guns at the Island of *Fuogo*, one of which was refitting, by reason of an Engagement she had with another Privateer, I immediately weigh'd Anchor, and made that Island, which is not very far distant from those of *St. Vincent*, hoping to meet with the Enemies there ; but upon my Arrival I was inform'd by the *Portugueses*, that they had left the said Island *de Fuogo*, five Days before in the Night, without giving any notice of their Course. Whereupon I steer'd mine to the Coasts of *Guinea*, and touch'd first at the Cape of three Points, where I met with the Guard-Ship which was a *Dutch* Frigate of 34 Pieces of Ordnance, and was cruising on the Main. She did not fail to descry me, and forthwith sail'd directly towards me, to make a Discovery : Forasmuch as I also had a sight of her, and wish'd for an Opportunity to fight her, I caus'd a *Dutch* Flag to be set up, to avoid disheartning her, and to

give her
Cannon
near ex
and ma
she ince
with a
mine i
batteri
Four a
was I al
come t
of my l
which
Private
means o
she still
under
Points :
Dutch M
Guns,
I was
three Sh
me ; fo
whole I
chor w
that at
insulted
excite
front.
and ap
much d
Engage
pals'd b
that th
give

but the Night
f'em, and re-
ence they fe-
and Anchors
o which they
I steer'd my
insent, to pay
h Water and
those of Cape
I stay'd Eight
Term, having
Portuguese Bark
Privateers of
of *Fuogo*, one
son of an En-
r Privateer, I
r, and made
r distant from
meet with the
Arrival I was
hat they had
e Days before
any notice of
steer'd mine to
ch'd first at the
I met with the
b Frigat of 24
cruising on the
escry me, and
ards me, to
h as I also had
an Opportu-
Dutch Flag to
g her, and to

give her Liberty to draw near within my
Cannon-Shot. When I perceiv'd her to be
near enough, I put out the *French* Colours,
and made a Signal to her to strike Sail; but
she incontinently let fly a Broad-side at me
with a great deal of Courage, and receiv'd
mine in like manner. Thus we continu'd
battering one another, from Morning, till
Four a Clock in the Afternoon: Neither
was I able to get the Weather-gage, nor to
come to a close Engagement, to make use
of my *Bucanier* Fuses to good purpose, in
which consists the principal Force of our
Privateers, nor to hinder her, by the
means of the Advantage of the Wind, which
she still kept over me, from casting Anchor
under the Fort of the Cape of the three
Points; where there were also two other
Dutch Men of War, one of which carry'd 14
Guns, and the other 28.

I was apt to believe at first, that those
three Ships would joyn together in quest of
me; so that I tack'd round about during a
whole Day, to wait for 'em, and cast An-
chor within a League of the Road, hoping
that at last the Shame of seeing themselves
insulted over, after such a manner, would
excite 'em to endeavour to revenge the Af-
front. But all these Efforts were in vain,
and apparently the Guard-Ship was too
much disabled to stand in need of a second
Engagement. A small *Portuguese* Vessel that
pass'd by soon after, gave me to understand,
that those Ships were the same, that had

oblig'd the *Sieur Roy*, Commander of the King's *Pink*, call'd the *Deep*, to abandon the Coast, which was afterwards confirm'd by the *Sieur Roy* himself, at the Prince's Island, where we happen'd to meet.

Thus having perceiv'd, that the Enemies refus'd to fight, and judging that it would be disadvantageous to me to attack 'em under the Cannon of the Fort; I took a Resolution to go to *Cape de Lopez*, and to the Islands of the Prince, and of *St. Thomas*. By the way, I went to discover *St. John's Cape*, which is on the Continent of *Guinee*, as well as that of the three Points, and I luckily met with an *English Ship* of 20 Guns, laden with 350 Negro's, Elephants Teeth, and Wax. It cost me no great trouble to take her, and the Captain told me that he came from *Ardra*, where he took on board 550 Negro's, some of whom he caus'd to be put to Death, for revolting against the Ship's Crew, and others made their Escape to Land in his Shallop, which they had taken away. *Ardra* is one of the principal Towns of *Guinee*, situated on the Sea-shoar, being the usual Place of Residence of a Prince, who governs a large Tract of Land in that Country.

From thence I pass'd to the Prince's Island, in the sight of which I took a small *Caper* of *Brandenburg*, arm'd with Eight Pieces of Cannon, and 70 Men: She was wont to cruise in that Latitude, and to seize on small Barks that pass'd by that way,

without

without
lours.

to cause
be clean

had ta
mingo, i

under th
a suffice

out of n
some tim

certain E
fore the

In the
iners to

Orders t
be careen

had tak
board h

Month
the Coast

lands of
out meeti

urn'd to
lands, w

all'd with
made ever

nd stood
with a D

Caper I ha
or Provid

o serve u
of Angola

or six Mo
he *English*

under of the
to abandon
ords confirm'd
he Prince's I-
neet.

the Enemies
that it would
attack 'em un-
took a Refo-
z, and to the

Thomas. By
John's Cape,

of Guinea, as
, and I lucki-

20 Guns, la-
nants Teeth,

at trouble to
me that he

ook on board
he caus'd to

g against the
their Escape

they had ta-
he principal

he Sea-shoar,
vidence of a

tract of Land
e Prince's I-

took a small
with Eight

1: She was
and to seize

y that way,
without

without any Distinction of Nation or Co-
lours. Afterwards I enter'd the Harbour,
to cause my Ship, which was very foul, to
be cleans'd, and to dispatch the *English* Prize,
I had taken just before: I sent her to *St. Do-*
mingo, in *America*, to be condemn'd there,
under the Command of the *Sieur de Nave*, with
a sufficient number of Men, whom I took
out of my own Ship. But I was inform'd
some time after, that she was retaken by
certain *English* Men of War, who were be-
fore the lesser *Goeree*.

In the mean while, not to suffer my Ma-
iners to lead an idle kind of Life, I gave
Orders to the Officers to cause my Ship to
be careen'd, and with the *Brandenburg* Caper
I had taken, and 90 Men, whom I put on
board her, we steer'd our Course, during
Month and half, cruising up and down
the Coasts of *Guinee*, or round about the
Islands of the Prince, and of *St. Omer*, with-
out meeting any Enemy. Afterwards I re-
turn'd to the Road of the former of those
Islands, where I caus'd my Ship to be victu-
all'd with all possible speed; and having
made every thing ready, I weigh'd Anchor,
and stood in directly for *St. Thomas's* Island,
with a Design to sell or to truck away the
Caper I had taken. And indeed, I barter'd her
for Provisions, not having a sufficient Store
to serve us whilst we cruis'd along the Coasts
of *Angola*, where I determin'd to pass five
or six Months, to avoid a Privateer which
the *English* were building in those Parts of

Guinee: They actually fitted out three Men of War and a Fire-Ship, to seek for me in the Road of *St. Thomas*, where they judg'd that I was to continue for some time. At my departure from that Island I descry'd a Ship riding at Anchor, and making towards her, I gave her Chase for a long time, but I could not by any means hinder her from getting a-shoar, and falling in with the Island of *St. Omer*. I mis'd it not taking her 150 Pounds of Gold Dust which that *Dutch* Interloper had traded for on the Coast.

Afterwards I steer'd to the Coasts of *Angola*, which are situated above 250 Leagues beyond the Equinoctial Line. I arriv'd there *September 22*, and got Information of the distance of three Leagues from the Port of *Cabinda*, that there were two *English* Vessels, laden with *Negro's*. Forasmuch as I lay under the Wind of that Port I kept off from the Shoar, hoping that the next day the South-west Wind, that usually blows from the Main, would convey me directly into the Port. That Morning, very early, I descry'd a Ship with *English* Colours making up towards me, yet I did not at first take her to be a Man of War, but discovered some time after, that she carry'd 54 Pieces of Ordnance. I us'd all the Precaution imaginable not to fright her away and set up *Dutch* Colours to make up to her with greater Facility: The *English* Ship on the other side did almost the same thing, and

and by t
discharg
to draw
Design,
sp, steer
believe t
that our
sails, or
We pass
Day, til
the ince
Cannon-f
at last th
ood min
within G
Cannon
ne to pu
wer her
the *Englis*
pouring
broad-sid
much as f
men kill'
earer, I
making a
orts to g
ining to
nce I wa
because w
aving ap
eing her
who lay hi
and they
con abate

ed out three
to seek for
where they
nue for some
m that Island
Anchor, and
her Chase for
by any means
ar, and falling
. I mis'd it
of Gold Dust
had traded for
Coasts of An
e 250 League
e. I arriv'd
information a
es from the
were two En
gro's. For a
d of that Port
oping that the
l, that usually
convey me di
morning, very
n *English* Co
et I did not a
Var, but dis
t she carry'd
all the Pre
ht her away
ake up to her
English Ship or
same thing
and

and by the Cannon-Shot, which she boldly
discharg'd from time to time, endeavour'd
to draw near us. Having perceiv'd her
Design, I feign'd to wait for her coming
up, steering very slowly, to induce her to
believe that my Ship was over-loaded, or
that our Course was hinder'd for want of
sails, or a sufficient Complement of Men.
We pass'd after this manner from Break of
Day, till Ten a Clock in the Morning :
she incessantly maintain'd her Flag with
Cannon-shot without Balls ; but perceiving
at last that I did not do the like to make
good mine, and that we were already come
within Gun-shot one of another, she let off
Cannon loaded with Ball, which oblig'd
me to put out *French* Colours, and to an-
swer her Salute. At the sight of that Flag,
the *English* Man of War, without endea-
vouring to get the Wind of us, let fly two
broad-sides, which I receiv'd without so
much as firing one Gun, altho I had seven
Men kill'd : I hop'd that being come a little
nearer, I might render her incapable of
making an Escape ; using my utmost Ef-
forts to get close within Fusée-shot, deter-
mining to embolden her to come on Board,
since I was not in a condition to board her,
because we were to the Leeward. At last,
having approach'd by little and little, and
seeing her within the reach of my Fusileers,
who lay hid under Deck, I caus'd 'em to get up,
and they made so continual a Fire, that they
soon abated that of the Enemies.

In the mean while, forasmuch as their Company consisted of above Three Hundred Men, and they were also sensible that their Design could not be accomplish'd by the discharging of their Cannon, a Resolution was taken to board us, which they did with hideous Outcrys, and Threats, to give us no Quarter, unless we surrender'd: But their Grappling-Irons not being able to lay hold on the Stern of my Ship, theirs ran in such a manner, that she dash'd her Poop against my Boltsprit, and broke it in pieces.

Then my Men taking the Advantage of the Hurry and Disorder, lost none of their aim, and fir'd so furiously for an Hour and half, that the Enemy being no longer able to resist; and having lost many of their Mariners, began to despond, and retir'd underneath the Decks. I also perceiv'd almost at that very instant that they made me a sign with their Hats to give 'em Quarter. Whereupon I caus'd my Men to desist from firing, and commanded the *English* to embark in their Shallops, in order to surrender themselves on board my Ship. At the same time I appointed some of my Attendants to leap into that of the Enemies, to seize on it, and to prevent all manner of Surprise. I was already overjoy'd at the taking of so considerable a Prize; and so much the rather, in regard that after having master'd that Vessel, which was the Guard-Ship of *Angola*, and

the large Seas; I better than my from on veering satisfaction taken the mea had left two Sha gether, and made ver was lively Re for since Actors not whe not able selves h the Re might a that are powder forming Fire, V Cords, a deadly noise of and of all sides crashing bles, of the

uch as their
Three Hun-
sensible that
omplish'd by
on, a Reso-
which they
and Threats,
fs we surren-
ons not being
of my Ship,
hat she dash'd
it, and broke

Advantage of
none of their
an Hour and
longer able
any of their
and retir'd
also perceiv'd
at they made
ve 'em Quar-
Men to de-
ed the *English*
in order to
rd my Ship
some of my
of the Ene-
prevent all
ready over-
nsiderable a
r, in regard
that Vessel,
Angola, and
the

the largest that the *English* had in those Seas; I should be in a condition to get better Prizes, and to attack any Man of War whatever: My Men were no less joyful than my self; some of whom were going from on Board, and others were employ'd in veering the Cable, with a great deal of satisfaction, when on a suddain Fire, having taken the Powder in the Gun-room, by the means of a Match, which the Captain had left there, hoping to escape with his two Shallops; the Ships being grappl'd together, were both blown up into the Air, and made the most dreadful Noise that ever was heard. 'Tis impossible to make a lively Representation of that sad Spectacle; for since the Spectators were themselves the Actors in so bloody a Tragedy, they knew not whether they saw it or not, and were not able to judge, but of what they themselves had felt: Therefore leaving it to the Reader to imagine the Horror that might arise from the sight of two Ships that are blown up into the Air with Gunpowder, above the height of 200 † Fathoms, † Toises. forming as it were an huge Mountain of Fire, Water, Fragments of the Ships, Cords, pieces of Ordnance and Men, with a deadly Havock; during which, amidst the noise of the Guns that were let off in the Air, and of the roaring Waves that swell'd up on all sides; one might also hear the horrible crashing of the shatter'd Masts and Tables, of the torn Sails and Cords; of the

Men crying out, and of the broken Bones, leaving all that I say to the Imagination of the Reader. I shall only declare here what befel my self, and by what good Fortune I escap'd.

When the Fire took, I stood on the Deck of my Ship in the Fore-Castle, where I was giving Orders, and was blown up with some part of the Deck so violently, that (as I take it) the extreme Height, to which I was hurry'd, hinder'd me from being involv'd among the Fragments of the Ships, where I must inevitably have been crush'd in a thousand pieces: I fell back into the Sea, quite stunn'd, and continu'd for a long while under Water, without being able to recover my self; till at last struggling in the Water, as a Man, who is afraid of being drown'd, I got above it, and caught hold of a piece of Mast that lay near me. Then I cry'd out to some of my Men whom I saw swimming round about me, and exhorted 'em to be of good Courage, hoping that we might save our selves if we could find some of our Shallops. But that which troubl'd me more than my own Misfortune, was the sight of two half Bodies, in which there was still some Remainder of Life, floating on the Water, and leaving the Place where they sunk stain'd with their Blood; as also to see round about me an infinite number of Limbs and Members torn from Bodies, and the greatest part of 'em spitted on the Splinters

of

of Wood
Men havi
the Wrec
ne that
top a R
small Bo
Whereup
who had
very one
o great
ast our
ve all go
ur Mast
legs shot
three or
that serv
we fough
and a sma
ish'd our
bly coul
fine Prov
ecure our
As soon
my self al
ran out c
and which
being blow
for me w
with a pic
the Woun
was done
were wou
without a
know whi

broken Bones, of Wood. In the mean while, one of my
Imagination of Men having espy'd an entire Shallop amidst
the Wreck, that swam on the Water, told
me that 'twas requisite to endeavour to
stop a Hole therein, and to take out a
small Boat, which was enclos'd within it.
Whereupon about Fifteen or Sixteen of us,
who had escaped, made up to the Shallop,
every one on his piece of Wood, and took
great Care to clear our Boat, that at
last our Attempt prov'd successful. Thus
we all got into it, and not long after sav'd
our Master-Gunner, who had one of his
legs shot off in the Fight. We took up
three or four Oars, or pieces of Planks,
that serv'd us for the same use. Then
we sought for somewhat to make a Sail,
and a small Mast; and after having fur-
nish'd our selves in the best manner we pos-
sibly could, we entirely rely'd upon the Di-
vine Providence, which alone was able to
secure our Life and Safety.

As soon as I had ceas'd from Work, I found
my self all over besmear'd with Blood that
ran out of a Wound I receiv'd in my Head,
and which was apparently occasion'd by my
being blown up. Therefore Lint was made
for me with my Handkerchief, and a Band
with a piece of my Shirt, having first wash'd
the Wound with Urine. The same thing
was done for others of our Company, who
were wounded, whilst our Shallop sail'd
without any sight of Land, neither did we
know whither we were steering; but that
which

which added to our Affliction was, that we had no Provisions, and had already pass'd three Days without either eating or drinking; insomuch, that one of our Men, quite worn out with Hunger and Thirst, drank so great a quantity of salt Water, that he burst. The greatest part of our Company vomited continually, whether they receiv'd any Injury from the Water they swallow'd upon their falling into the Sea, as it befel me, or from that which they were necessitated to drink. As for my self, I was a long time indispos'd, so that my Body swell'd extremely, and a great number of small Pimples broke forth throughout my Body: But I am apt to believe, the cure of my Dropsie, and the Health that I have in some measure recover'd, and which is by degrees more and more restor'd, to be chiefly owing to a Quartan-Ague, that seiz'd on me a little while after that Misfortune. I do not reckon up the other Inconveniences that were occasion'd by so desperate a Blow, it being impossible that they should not befall any Person under my Circumstances. The Fire of the Powder burnt all my Hair, my whole Face, and all over one side of my Body, and I became insensible of that Accident, which commonly happens among the Cannoniers, who serve at Sea; that is to say, I voided Blood thro' the Nose, Ears and Mouth. I know not whether the Blast of the Gun-powder produces that Effect, by excessively dilating the Vessels

was, that we Vessels that contain the Blood in our Body, already pass'd that the ends of the Branches let it out, ing or drink whether the great Noise and Commotion ur Men, quite that it causes in those Organs, obliges the Thirst, drank Veins to open: But let the case be how it ater, that he will, 'tis of no great moment, since this our Company is not a proper Place to hold a Consultation they receiv'd of Physitians, as long as we are ready to be ey swallow'd starv'd with Hunger; nor to enquire what a, as it befel became of all the *English* Men, when we had were necessari much ado to save our selves.

self, I was a We continu'd our Course by rowing up at my Body the Current, because we knew it came from t number of the Port of *Cabinda*; but forasmuch as the oughout my Wind was contrary, we could never reach eve, the cure it; and we were forc'd to content our selves n that I have only to make *Cape Corfa* if it were possible, and which is which is distant Twelve Leagues from that tor'd, to be of *Catherfna*, where we were not able to Ague, that land, by reason of a Bar, which renders the er that Mis- Coast inaccessible. That was our Design, he other In- but Hunger hinder'd us from putting it in ion'd by so Execution, and 'twas requisite to overcome possible that the Obstacles that Nature laid in our way, on under my by getting a-shoar notwithstanding the Bar, the Powder which we did at last, with a great deal of ace, and all Difficulty, hoping to meet with some Ne- d I became gro, who might supply us with Victuals. a commonly Therefore one of our Company being de- s, who serve tach'd to seek for somewhat to appease our Blood thro' Hunger, had the good Luck to find in a I know not Pond that the Sea had form'd hard by, good powder pro- store of Oysters sticking to certain Branches, diating the and immediately ran to give us notice of Vessels

this Discovery. Whereupon we all got up the Channel, to that Pond; and being arriv'd there, eat Oysters with a very good Appetite; opening 'em with Knives we had in our Pockets, which we lent one to another very charitably. After having spent two Days there, I divided my Men into three small Bands, and sent 'em to seek for Provisions and Habitations farther up the Land, with Orders to return to the Shallop in the Evening. I also went forth with the rest, but we did not meet with an Habitation, nor any Footsteps of Men. We only saw many Herds of Buffles, of the bigness of an Ox, which fled from us as we drew near 'em. Thus the whole Day being spent, without finding any thing, we all came back to the Shallop to feed upon Oysters, and took a Resolution to depart from that Place the next day, to go to *Cape Corfa*, to the Leeward of which is situated a large Port, where the Vessels that come from Cruising, take in fresh Water and Wood. The Negro's who inhabit the Country as soon as they are inform'd of the Arrival of any Vessels, by the discharging of their Cannon, instantly repair to the Shoar, bringing Provisions to be exchange'd for Brandy, Knives, Hatchets, and other Toys. They are oblig'd to take up their Habitation far from the Sea, by reason that all those Coasts are surrounded with Marshy Grounds. We were no sooner arriv'd at that Cape, but we heard a great noise made by the Negro's, who

who came
lay at An
ry amon
some of
had very
cessary
modities
meet wi
ledge of
'em, ne
to persw
tauban,
figur'd; a
that desi
However
their La
that I w
and that
what to
any mea
requisite
conduct
of the h
he woul
formerly
At last
whole C
Prince.
tions of
tle and
their Mi
some Ba
longer
we arriv

ban?
we all got
; and being
2 very good
nives we had
one to ano
having spent
Men into
n to seek for
ther up the
the Shallop
rth with the
an Habitati-
Ve only saw
gness of an
ew near 'em.
nt, without
back to the
and took a
t Place the
to the Lee-
arge Port,
n Cruising,
The Ne-
as soon as
al of any
r Cannon,
nging Pro-
y, Knives,
are oblig'd
from the
ts are sur-
We were
but we
Negro's,
who

who came to sell Wood to the Ships that lay at Anchor in the Port, and I made enquiry among 'em, endeavouring to find out some of my Acquaintance: For since they had very frequently supply'd me with necessary Refreshments, Wood and other Commodities in my other Voyages; I hop'd to meet with some Persons that had Knowledge of me; but altho I knew many of 'em, nevertheless 'twas almost impossible to perswade 'em, that I was Captain *Montauban*, in regard that I was so much disfigur'd; and they all took me for an Impostor that design'd to impose on their Credulity. However, I took the Liberty to tell 'em in their Language, which I understood a little, that I was ready to starve with Hunger, and that I entreated 'em to give me somewhat to eat: But I could not prevail by any means whatever, and 'twas absolutely requisite for me to beg the favour of 'em to conduct me to Prince *Thomas*, who is the Son of the King of that Country, hoping that he would call to mind the good Offices I had formerly done him.

At last I found means to introduce my whole Company into the Presence of that Prince. We pass'd at first thro the Habitations of those Negro's, and began by little and little, to make some Impressions on their Mind; insomuch, that they gave us some *Banana's*, which are a kind of Figs, longer than ones Hand. The next day we arriv'd at Prince *Thomas's* Seat, but I was
in

in so forry an Equipage, that I could not make him take any Cognizance of me, by all the signs I gave him, either in the *Moorish* Language, or in that of the *Portugueses*, which he speaks very fluently. Forasmuch as in bathing with him one day, he had seen a Scar occasion'd by a Musquet-shot I had receiv'd in my Thigh; he told me that 'twas requisite at that very Instant to know whether I really were Capt. *Montauban*; and if I were not the Person, he would take Care that I should lose my Head. Whereupon he ask'd me whether I had not such a Scar; so that after having shew'd it to him, he immediately embrac'd me, and told me that he was very much concern'd to see me in so deplorable a Condition. At first he caus'd wholesome Victuals to be distributed to all my Retinue, and caus'd 'em to be lodg'd in separate Apartments, giving particular Orders to the Negro's, with whom they were quarter'd, to take all possible Care of 'em. As for my self, he retain'd me in his Court, and caus'd me continually to eat at his own Table. When I was a little refresh'd, he acquainted me with his Intention to conduct me to his Father, whose usual Place of Residence was five or six Leagues distant from thence; that is to say, ten or twelve from the Sea-shoar. Whereupon I gave him to understand, that I was very sensible of the Honour he did me, with extreme Satisfaction, and humbly entreated him at the same time to give me leave to take my Free-Booters a-

long

long with
Pieces o
to appe
condesce
desir'd,
out alto
up the R
the Coun
that one
Upon
a Village
tages,
where th
ons, w
that ha
his Favo
me in Pr
my Atte
We four
mentatio
Priest of
Papa, d
that the
which is
for Prie
in great
those Pe
Holy Ma
time of
was in M
lick Aud
wait pa
Lodging
because

t I could no
nce of me, by
r in the Moor
he Portugueses
Forasmuch
day, he had
usquet-shot I
he told me
ery Instant to
Capt. Montau-
son, he would
se my Head.
ner I had not
g shew'd it to
d me, and
concern'd to
tion. At first
e distributed
n to be lodg'd
articular Or-
m they were
e of'em. As
Court, and
s own Table.
e acquaint-
nduct me to
f Residence
om thence;
m the Sea-
to under-
of the Ho-
atisfaction,
e same time
-Booters a-
long

long with me, and to bestow on us some
Pieces of Stuff to put us in an Equipage fit
to appear before so great a Monarch: He
condescended to grant every thing that I
desir'd, so that three Days after, we set
out altogether in a large Canoo, and pass'd
up the River of *Cape de Lopez*, by reason that
the Country is so full of Fenns and Marshes,
that one cannot travel thro' it by Land.

Upon our Arrival at the King's Court, in
a Village, consisting of three Hundred Cot-
tages, cover'd with Palm-Tree-Leaves,
where the King keeps his Wives and Relati-
ons, with some other Negro Families,
that have obtain'd the greatest Share of
his Favour; a Lodging was provided for
me in Prince *Thomas's* Apartments, and all
my Attendants were dispos'd of in others.
We found the Inhabitants making great La-
mentation and Mourning, because the chief
Priest of their Religion, whom they call'd
Papa, dy'd that very Day; and in regard
that the Funeral Pomp was to commence,
which is usually continu'd for Seven Days,
for Priests of his Quality. Indeed he was
in great Veneration and Esteem among
those People, who look'd upon him as a
Holy Man. Forasmuch as during the whole
time of that doleful Solemnity, the King
was in Mourning, and admitted none to pub-
lick Audience, Prince *Thomas* advis'd me to
wait patiently, and not to stir out of my
Lodging, unless it were to visit his Majesty,
because it was the Custom of his Nation.

How-

However, I could not forbear going to take a view of the Funeral Procession, yet could discern nothing but a great Concourſe of People round about the Corps of the Deceased Person. In the mean while, I was well entertain'd by the Order of Prince *Thomas*, who was gon to see his Father. Indeed there was no want of *Banana's*, Elephants Flesh, and River-Fish; but we had neither Bread nor Wine, nor any kind of Sawce, as it may be easily imagin'd. My Men were treated in like manner in their Apartments, during the whole time of our Abode in that Place.

At the end of Eight Days Prince *Thomas* came to us, and introduc'd us into the Presence of the King his Father; he is a portly Negro, of a tall Stature, well shap'd, and aged about Fifty Years; who, to do me greater Honour, upon his Son's Recommendation, went out of his House, on purpose to receive me, and avanc'd some Paces forward to meet me. He leant on four or five Women, who supported him on all sides, shewing a certain Grandeur, after a very confused and odd manner. He was surrounded with a great number of Negroes, arm'd with Lances and Fuses, which they discharg'd from time to time with very little Order: Many Trumpeters and Drummers march'd before him, and at the Head of that Company were carry'd divers Standards, of the Colour of those of *Holland*. He had no other Cloaths than a piece of Cot-

bear going to ton-Cloth, with white and blue Stripes,
 Proceſſion, yet with which ſome Parts were only cover'd
 eat Concourſe by ſeveral Folds made round about his Body.
 rps of the De He was pleas'd to make me ſenſible of his
 hile, I was well Amity and Reſpect for me, by many Demon-
 rince Thomas ſtrations; and having ſtretch'd out his Hand,
 Indeed there told me, that 'twas the firſt time he gave it
 phants Fieſh, to any Man. When we were arriv'd at his
 neither Bread Houſe, he ſat down at the Door, and caus'd
 Sawce, as it me to be placed on one ſide, and his Son on
 y Men were the other. Then he ask'd me ſeveral Que-
 Apartments, ſtions about the Grandeur and Power of the
 Abode in that King my Maſter; and after I had acquaint-
 ed him, that he alone at preſent carry'd on
 Prince Thomas a War againſt the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders*, (of
 into the Pre- whom his Maſteſty had ſome knowledge, as
 he is a portly having often ſeen 'em at *Cape de Lopez*) and
 ſhap'd, and that he likewise maintain'd it againſt the
 o, to do me *Germans* and *Spaniards*, more potent Na-
 s Recommen- tions than the former, he told me that he
 , on purpoſe was well ſatiſfied with my Narrative, and
 me Paces for- that he had a mind to drink a Health to the
 on four or King of *France*. Whereupon ſome Palm-
 him on all Wine was immediately brought to him,
 eur, after a which was not very diſagreeable to the Pa-
 er. He was late, and his Female Attendants ſerv'd him
 r of Negroes, with it in a large Cryſtal-Glaſs. As ſoon as
 which they he began to take the Glaſs, the Negroes and
 with very lit- Negreſſes, who attended in great numbers,
 and Drum- held up his right Arm, and continually kept
 at the Head it ſteady in the ſame poſture, till he had made
 divers Stan- an end of drinking. Afterwards a great noiſe
Holland. He was made with the Trumpets and Drums,
 ce of Cot- and a Volley of Muſket, or rather Buſee-shot.

ton.

R

Then

Then Prince Thomas ask'd me what was the Name of the King of *France*; and after I had made Answer that he was call'd *Lewis the Great*, he told me he was desirous that I should stand God-father to a Child he had, aged only seven or eight Months, and that I should name him *Lewis the Great*; whereupon I could not forbear smiling a little. He promis'd me likewise that at the first Voyage I should make to his Country he would deliver him into my Hands, to be convey'd to *France*, and presented to the King, for whose Service he design'd him; being well pleased that his Son should be educated after the manner of that Nation, and in the Court of so great a Monarch. I also engag'd on the other side, that the very first time I should come back to *Guinee*, I would not fail to put him in mind of his Promise, to the end that at my Return to *France* I might set before the King the greatest Present that could possibly be made; namely, the Son of Prince Thomas. Pray assure him (said that Prince) that I am one of his particular Friends, and that if he stand in need of my Service I will pass over into *France*, with all the Lances and Fusces belonging to the King my Father; that is to say, with all the Forces of the Kingdom. Then the King resuming his Discourse gave me to understand, that he also would take a Progress thither in Person, if it were requisite, and immediately all the Negroes and Negresses made so hideous an Out-cry, that I was extremely surpriz'd: That Cry no sooner

sooner
Volley
sounding
Lance-
another
Shouts
somewh
know t
was I a
ceiv'd
King of
Ceremo
pledg'd
that we
Which
caus'd t
him, m
to accep
and afte
This
Prince T
Quarter
visit his
we pass
farther
five or s
People,
vell'd to
never h
all part
quantiti
and Ele
elephants
like the

ne what was
e; and after
call'd *Lewis*
desirous that I
child he had,
s, and that I
; whereupon
ttle. He pro-
rst Voyage I
e would deli-
convey'd to
ng, for whose
well pleased
ed after the
the Court of
gag'd on the
ime I should
ot fail to put
the end that
at set before
at could pos-
on of Prince
(that Prince)
Friends, and
service I will
Lances and
Father; that
the Kingdom.
course gave
would take a
were requi-
Negroes and
ut-cry, that I
at Cry no
sooner

sooner ceas'd, but the Fusileers discharg'd a Volley of all their Fire-arms, the Trumpets sounding, and Drums beating; and the Lance-men fell a running from one side to another backward and forward, with great Shouts; so that I could not choose but be somewhat frighted: And indeed, I did not know the meaning of that Uproar, neither was I able to recover my self, till I perceiv'd that the King drank a Health to the King of *France* a second time, with the same Ceremonies as before; that Prince *Thomas* pledg'd his Father, and that 'twas order'd that we should all drink at the same time. Which being done accordingly, the King caus'd two Loaves of Wax to be brought to him, made me a Present of 'em, desiring me to accept of 'em as a Mark of his Friendship, and afterwards enter'd his House.

This Audience being thus concluded, Prince *Thomas* conducted me thro' all the Quarters of the Village, where he went to visit his Friends, and on the following Days we pass'd to divers other Villages, situated farther up the Country at the distance of five or six Leagues one from another. These People, the greatest part of whom never travell'd to the Sea-shoar, and consequently never had a sight of white Men, ran from all parts to see us, and brought us greater quantities of Fruit, and of Flesh, of Buffles and Elephants, than we could eat. The Elephants of that Country are not altogether like those of the *East-Indies*; being but of

one kind, as also are those of *Cofala*, near *Zanguebar*, on the Eastern Coasts of *Ethiopia*. The Negroes eat 'em with a great deal of Delight, and esteem their Flesh beyond any other: They make their most sumptuous Feasts with 'em, and those who were desirous to do us most Honour, presented 'em to us instead of Buffles; on which, nevertheless I set a greater Value.

Forasmuch as they were not able to comprehend the difference of Colour between our Complexion and theirs, they stroak'd our Faces with their Hands, to see whether the white Colour would pass away; nay, divers of our Company had their Hands scrap'd with Knives, sometimes even till they were hurt, yet we durst not complain of that rough usage: However, Prince *Thomas* perceiving it, commanded his Attendants not to suffer 'em thus to rub and scratch our Fingers, and spoke aloud to the People that ran after us, telling 'em that all Foreigners were white, and that if the Negroes travell'd into other Countries, they would appear as strange to those Natives, as we did among them in *Guinee*. Nay, he often smil'd to see the Multitude continually running after us, as if we had been some unknown Animals; and I know not whether he were displea'd to see us thus pester'd by the Importunity of the Negroes, or whether he might not take some Delight in observing the Sottishness of those People: And indeed, I had sometimes an opportunity to take notice of all their extravagant Fopperies. At

At la
pany'd
Prince
take les
me in a
the Cu
promis
to *Guin*
Canoo,
Thomas
ble Ent
to treat
desirous
a Godf
much t
had an
what to
sanctify
But t
Priest o
or reme
pronoun
cramen
some of
guese Ve
to *Cape*
ter. T
roduc'o
ses, alth
maintai
But the
on of it,
ficulty o
ren Co

At last, after three Days Journey, accompany'd with variety of Divertisements, the Prince convey'd me thro' another Road to take leave of his Father. The King carefs'd me in a most obliging manner, according to the Custom of his Nation, and made me promise to visit him the first time I return'd to *Guinee*. Afterwards we embark'd in his Canoo, and arriv'd the next day at Prince *Thomas's* Village, where he continu'd the noble Entertainments, with which he was wont to treat us. Then he told me that he was delirous that I should perform the Office of a Godfather to his Son, and I comply'd so much the more willingly, in regard that I had an Opportunity of contributing somewhat to the making of a Christian, and the sanctifying of a Soul.

But forasmuch as I doubted whether the Priest of the Village knew how to baptize, or remember'd the Words that ought to be pronounc'd in the Administration of that Sacrament, I entreated the Prince to provide some of those Priests who were in the *Portuguese* Vessels, and he accordingly sent for one to *Cape de Lopez*, who arriv'd two Days after. The Christian Religion was first introduc'd into that Country by the *Portuguese*, altho' it be true indeed, that they do not maintain it therein as much as it is requisite: But the Obstacles that hinder the Propagation of it, proceed without doubt from the difficulty of inhabiting an almost wild and barren Country, where the Air and Provisions

are not natural to Foreigners: Therefore in order to its firm Establishment in those Parts, 'twould be expedient for the *Europeans* to have settled Habitations, or to build Towns there, to instruct the Negroes in the Articles of Faith, and Mysteries of the Gospel, and to send Missions thither from time to time; which might be done with great Facility, by reason that those People are extremely docil, and very capable of imbibing good Principles, and of embracing any Doctrine that one would go about to teach 'em, since they have liv'd for a long time without any manner of Belief, or any *Idea* of another Religion. These Negroes being thus converted to Christianity, some of 'em might be ordain'd Priests, who might be furnish'd with Rituals, and other Books relating to the Ceremonies of the Church, and a Catechism for the regulating of their Faith, till they were capable of reading the New Testament. It would also be requisite to establish a Bishop in that Town, who should take care to send Priests into the several Habitations of the Negroes throughout the Country, and to cause Oratories to be built in the most populous Places.

Thus the Christian Religion might be propagated in *Guinee*, and would be less liable to be extirpated by the Wars that the Natives make with foreign People. A Reformation might also be effectually carry'd on among the Christians, who reside in the Kingdoms of *Fex* and *Morocco*, and a mutual

al Co
tween
of *Gu*
one a
throu
Christ
same
much
the N
Priest
are no
having
having
room
Neith
vours
they
some
the S
But
upon
Princ
and n
Fathe
Relat
was C
bore
from
held
three
lemn
Magi
the
Guar

al Correspondence might be maintain'd between the Priests of that Nation, and those of *Guinee*, to the end that they might assist one another in the Preservation of Religion throughout all the Coasts of *Africa*. Indeed Christianity was planted almost after the same manner among the *Gentiles*, who had a much greater Aversion to our Faith, than the Negroes of *Guinee* have at present. The Priests, who are to be found thereabouts, are not for the most part real Priests; not having been ordain'd by any Bishop, and having only substituted themselves in the room of those who died in their Country: Neither have they retain'd any thing that favours never so little of Christianity, altho' they perform many Ceremonies, and have some Appearance of the Administration of the Sacraments.

But to return to our private Christenings; upon the Arrival of the *Portuguese* Priest, Prince *Thomas's* Son was actually Baptiz'd, and nam'd *Lewis the Great*, according to his Father's Intention: A certain Negress of his Relations stood Godmother, and I my self was Godfather. I was told that that Lady bore the name of *Antonia*, which she receiv'd from the Wife of a *Portuguese* Captain, who held her at the Baptismal Font. Two or three Days after the Celebration of this Solemnity, which was perform'd with all the Magnificence that could be expected among the Negroes; some of Prince *Thomas's* Guards, who were posted at *Cape de Lopez*,

to give notice of the Arrival of the Ships, came to acquaint him with that of an *English* Vessel. Whereupon I entreated him to give me leave to embark therein, to return to my native Country, in order to my perfect Recovery from that illness, under which I still labour'd. But he was not willing that I should put my self into the Hands of my Enemies, and desir'd me to have a little Patience, till the Arrival of some *Portuguese*, with whom he would readily permit me to go. However, he went to *Cape de Lopez*, to truck away Elephants Teeth, Wax, and Negroes, for Iron, Arms and Brandy, and return'd after ten or twelve Days, when he told me, that a *Portuguese* Vessel lay at Anchor at *Cape de Lopez*; that 'twas requisite to cause my self to be convey'd in Canoos, to embark there; that he had recommended me to the Captain; and that I should want nothing that was necessary for me during my Voyage to *Europe*.

Then I took care to get all my Men together, except two, whom I did not think fit to wait for, because they had taken a Progress into the Country for five or six Days, and I knew not where to find 'em. Therefore we embark'd in the Canoos of that Prince, after having solemnly taken my leave of him; and being arriv'd at *Cape de Lopez*, I perceiv'd that the *Portuguese* Commander was an old Acquaintance of mine, with whom I had contracted Friendship at the Island of *St. Thomas*. Whereupon I took
Ship

Ship w
cast An
venou
ness, a
a whole
in that
time, a
been s
Coasts.
of the
timate
bound
fers he
bark w
badoes,
meet
the rec
were o
were h
went o
notwit
the Go
to susp
without
upright
as to r
me all
can be
dur'd f
Ten
Thomas
Ship,
place,
the Gu

f the Ships,
of an *English*
him to give
o return to
my perfect
der which I
willing that
the Hands
have a little
e *Portuguese*,
rmit me to
de Lopez, to
Wax, and
randy, and
s, when he
lay at An-
as requisite,
in Canoos,
commended
ould want
me during

y Men to-
d not think
aken a Pro-
r fix Days,
a. There-
os of that
taken my
at Cape de
uese Com-
e of mine,
endship at
pon I took
Ship

Ship with him, and three Days after, we
cast Anchor before the same Island; the Go-
vernour of which shew'd me a world of kind-
ness, and did the like to all my Men, during
a whole Month that we were oblig'd to stay
in that Port. At the expiration of that
time, an *English* Ship arriv'd, which had
been steering her Course on the Golden
Coasts. I soon got into the Acquaintance
of the Captain, and at last we became so in-
timate Friends, that I thought my self
bound in Honour to accept of the kind Of-
fers he made me, He entreated me to em-
bark with him, and assur'd me, that at *Bar-
badoes*, to which place he was bound, I should
meet with all the Supplies, necessary for
the recovering of my Health; because there
were certain able *Jewish* Physitians, who
were his particular Friends. Therefore I
went on board his Ship, with all my Men,
notwithstanding all the Reasons alledg'd by
the Governour of the Island, to induce me
to suspect the *English* Captain, who was
without doubt one of the most courteous and
upright Men of his Nation: He was so kind
as to resign his Cabbin to me, and to afford
me all the Delights and Divertisements that
can be imagin'd, to mitigate the Pains I en-
dur'd from time to time.

Ten Days after our Departure from *Sr.
Thomas*, having lost the Rudder of our
Ship, we were oblig'd to set up a Mast in its
place, which was put thro' the Port-holes of
the Gun-room, and we were forc'd to steer
with

with it, during the whole time of our Voyage, which continu'd three Months. When we stood in for *Barbadoes*, our Provisions began to fail, and there only remain'd what was sufficient for three Days, insomuch, that the Captain being much offended at his being overcharg'd with my Men, order'd three quarters of their Allowance to be retrench'd; and as soon as we arriv'd in the Port, went to salute *M. Russel*, who was Governour of the Island. He gave him a particular Account of the Engagement I had with the Guard-Ship of *Angola*, and was very much blam'd for bringing me to *Barbadoes*. Afterwards, returning to his Ship, he related to me every thing that was discours'd between him and the Governour, who forbid him under pain of Death, to suffer me to land: However, he did not acquaint me with the Prohibition, but contented himself only to advise me not to go a-shore, to avoid giving any cause of Suspicion to *M. Russel*, which Order I promis'd punctually to observe, not being solicitous to take any further Cognizance of a Place, which was well known to me a long time ago, and being unwilling to give the least Offence to my Captain.

The next day, many *Jews*, who were turn'd out of *Martinica*, came to visit me upon the Report of my Arrival; and perceiving me to be very much indispos'd and weaken'd, they sent to me divers Physicians of their Nation, who told me that I could not be

be cur'd
profferi
Govern
might
Port.

M. Russel
me suc
not stir
appoint
bark, a
to *Mar*
selves v
at last
cob Len
during
Place.

Thro
the *Ma*
vernor
me his
especia
might
my He
time b
Captai
much
as to c
in a co
Island.
ner ten
know
so ill a
second
the Ev

m.
e of our Voy-
nths. When
Provisions be-
main'd what
somuch, that
ed at his be-
order'd three
be retrench'd;
e Port, went
Governour of
rticular Ac-
ad with the
as very much
adoes. After-
ne related to
rs'd between
orbid him un-
me to land :
me with the
self only to
avoid giving
ussell, which
to observe,
any further
n was well
nd being un-
to my Cap-

who were
visit me up-
nd perceiv-
d and weak-
hytians of
I could not
be

be cur'd, unless I were brought a-shoar,
proffering at the same time to sollicite the
Governour on my behalf, to give leave, that
I might be convey'd into a House on the
Port. Whereupon I drew up a Petition to
M. Russel, in which I entreated him to grant
me such a License, promising that I would
not stir out of the Chamber that should be
appointed for my Lodging, only to re-em-
bark, and to cause my self to be transported
to *Martinica*. However, the Physitians them-
selves were oblig'd to be my Bail, and I was
at last conducted to the House of one *M. Ja-
cob Lewes*, where great Care was taken of me
during the whole time of my Abode in that
Place.

Three Days after I was carry'd thither,
the Major-General came to see me by the Go-
vernor's Order; very generously promis'd
me his Protection, and offer'd his Service,
especially to procure me any thing that
might be necessary for the Restauration of
my Health: Yet I was visited from time to
time by the same Major, and every day by a
Captain of the Garrison; who came not so
much to enquire after the State of my Health,
as to observe, whether I should ere long be
in a condition to be transported out of the
Island. *M. Russel* himself came in like man-
ner ten or twelve Days after my Arrival, to
know whether it were true that I was really
so ill as it was reported: He also gave me a
second Visit seven or eight Days after, in
the Evening, and caus'd me to be remov'd
from

from the *Jew's* House where I lodg'd, to that of an *English* Merchant: He told me at the same time, that I should be better accommodated there than I had been at *M. Jacob Lewis's*; but the real Intention was, that I should be better guarded, and that I might not have an Opportunity of discoursing with so many People. The next day he came again to see me, and ask'd me how I lik'd my new Quarters. I heartily thank'd him for the good Offices he had done me, and to the end that he might not have cause to suspect my Men, I entreated him to give Orders, that they should be confin'd in the Cittadel, to prevent them from straggling about the Island, and from making their Escape.

Then *M. Ruffel* told me, that he intended to do so; but that I ought to understand that they were Prisoners of War, as well as my self. I reply'd, That I was not ignorant of it; and that I thought my self happy in falling into his Hands; but that the *English* Captain, who brought me to *Barbadoes*, had pass'd his Word that I should not be retain'd nor any of my Company: That upon his Protestations of inviolable Fidelity, and the Offers of Service he made me, I ventur'd to embark, relying on the marks of Friendship, which he had already shewn: Then I added, that my Request to him was only to grant me my Liberty, and that of my Men, promising that I would ever be mindful of the Favour, either in restoring the Prisoners whom I might carry off from the Islands, if I should

should
him wh
quire.

No,
your Ra
gallant
ness can
contrary
Pistoles
ply you
a Purse
for tha
acquain
Orders
again.

'em, w
what v
had Or
me: I
procur
at last
by the
my La
Officer
would
bark i
from

Th
which
French
Prison
Arriva
embar
ty to

should take up Arms again, or in paying him what Ransom he should think fit to require.

No, Sir, (said *M. Russel*) I will neither have your Ransom, nor your Prisoners; for you are so gallant a Man, that your Misfortune and Illness cannot but be pitied, and therefore on the contrary, I would entreat you to accept of Forty Pistoles, of which I make you a Present, to supply you with Necessaries. He gave 'em me in a Purse, which without doubt he brought for that very purpose, and at his Departure acquainted me that he was going to give Orders, that my Men should be got together again. The next day he sent me two of 'em, who told me, that they did not know what was become of the rest, and that they had Orders from the Governor to stay with me: I had the Liberty to send 'em abroad, to procure any thing that I stood in need of, and at last finding my self somewhat strengthen'd by the means of the extraordinary Care that my Landlord took of me, I acquainted the Officer, who visited me every day, that I would beg leave of the Governour to embark in the first Vessel that should set out from *Martinica*.

Three Days after there arriv'd a Bark, which the Count de *Blenac*, General of the French Islands, sent for the exchanging of Prisoners. *M. Russel* gave me notice of its Arrival, and that I should prepare for my embarking therein. Then I had the Liberty to go to his House to thank him for all the

the Kindnesses he had shewn me. He told me that he was sorry he was oblig'd by the Law of Arms not to allow me more Freedom than I had, and that he entreated me to afford a favourable Entertainment to the *English Men* who should fall into my Hands. Afterwards I went on board the *French Bark*, which was commanded by the *Sieur Courpon*, formerly an Inhabitant of *St. Christophers*; but I could not regain any of my Free-booters, except those two, who were sent to me by *M. Russel*, as I have already hinted.

We disembark'd at the Royal Fort of *Martinica*, and I repair'd with my two Men to the Town, to give a Visit to *M. de Blenac*, who was seiz'd with the last Fit of Sickness, of which he died. I gave him a particular Account of all my Adventures, and I perceiv'd him to be much surpriz'd to hear a Relation of so great Disasters. Forasmuch as he was desirous that I should lodge in his House all the time that I stay'd at *Martinica*, he made me every day repeat the particular Circumstances of my Engagement with the *English Ship*; and at last having found an Opportunity of conveying me to *France*, he sent to enquire after the Captain of a Vessel that was bound for that Kingdom, and recommended me to his Care. He determin'd likewise to give me Recommendatory Letters for *M. Phelipeaux*, to procure me some Employment; but the day before my departure, he fell into so great weakness, that he was no longer in a condition to write,

write,
Indeed
to be
for *M.*
ular
viceabl
ally ha
were in
the Pre
at that
be bef
their N
Knowl
of the
before
word,
And a
ritim
Latitud
highly
ty, Ju
signal
matter
ry of
The
Board
which
Days
Port o
and cor
ther I
having
Misfor
again

write, and died that very Evening, *June 10.* Indeed I had all the reason in the World to be very much concern'd at his Death; for *M. De Blenac*, who was a Person of singular Qualities, took delight in being serviceable to all Mankind; and more especially had a tender Compassion for those that were in a distressed Condition, or lay under the Pressures of ill Fortune, as my Case was at that time: He always endeavour'd to be beforehand with 'em, relieving 'em in their Necessities, as soon as they came to his Knowledge, and made a voluntary Proffer of the Favours he was ready to bestow, even before they could well be sued for. In a word, he was a Man of an Heroick Courage, and a skilful Navigator, well vers'd in Maritime Affairs; knowing all the Coasts and Latitudes of the Continent of *America*, and highly esteem'd by the King for his Integrity, Justice and Prudence, and for all the signal Services he had done the State, in matters relating to Trade, and the discovery of the Islands.

The next day after his Death, I went on Board the *Virgin*, a Vessel of *Bordeaux*, which was also built there, and after a few Days Passage; at last I arriv'd safe in the Port of that City, with many different and contrary Sentiments. I know not whether I shall bid adieu to the Sea for ever, having been so much dishearten'd by my last Misfortune; or whether I shall embark once again to revenge the Indignities put upon me

me by the *English*; or whether I shall undertake another Voyage, to get a small Estate; or whether I shall stay at home in Tranquillity, contenting my self with the peaceable Enjoyment of what my Relations have left me. However, 'tis certain, that Maritim Voyages are apt to create in Men almost the same Passions as Gaming: For as the losing Gamester, notwithstanding the ill Luck he has so often had before, does not believe that he shall always be unfortunate, but is still egg'd on by I know not what Impulse to venture farther; so we Mariners, whatever Disasters may have befallen us at Sea, are continually boy'd up with the hopes of meeting with a fair opportunity to indemnifie our selves for all our Losses. Upon the whole, I am apt to believe, that into whose Hands soever my Narrative may happen to fall, they will find it very difficult to give me Advise as to the Matter in Debate, and even to take it themselves.

F I N I S.

I shall under-
small Estate;
in Tranquil-
the peaceable
ns have left
at Maritim
n almost the
as the losing
ill Luck he
not believe
ate, but is
hat Impulse
ers, whate-
us at Sea,
he hopes of
to indem-
Upon the
into whose
happen to
to give me
e, and even